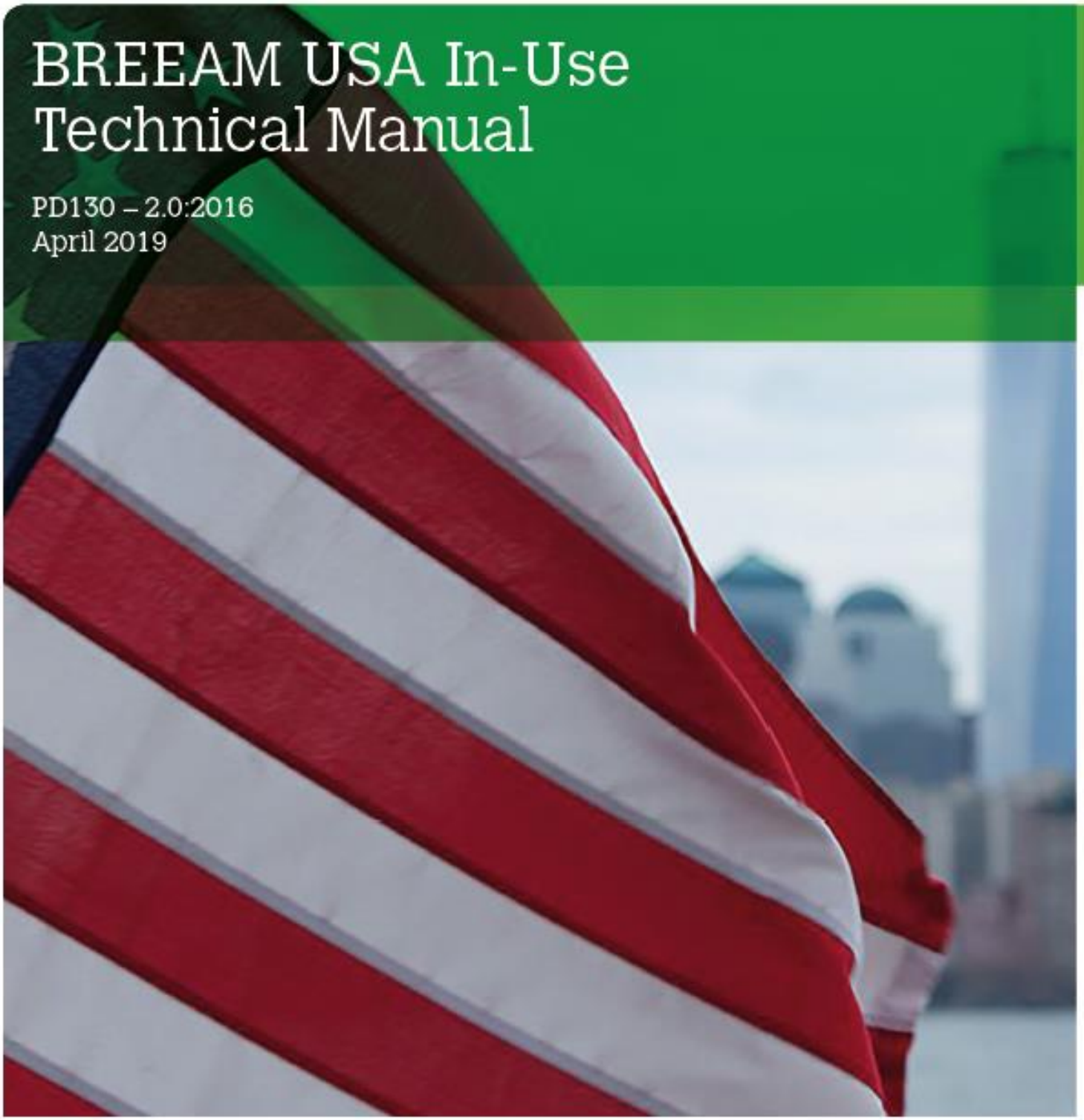
BREEAM® USA
delivered by bre

www.breeam.com/usa

BREEAM USA In-Use Technical Manual

PD130 – 2.0:2016
April 2019



bre

SD221 USA (c) BRE Global Ltd 2019

Terms and conditions

Disclaimer

The content of this Program Document is the property of BRE Global Limited and is made publicly available for information purposes only. Any testing, assessment, certification or approval activity related to this Program Document must be conducted in accordance with BRE Global Limited's approved processes, and such activity may only be undertaken by authorized employees, agents, and associates of BRE Global Limited, or approved parties ("Approved Party(ies)"). Any party wishing to use or reproduce this Program Document to offer testing, assessment, certification or approval must apply to BRE Global Limited for training, assessment and an associated license, in order to qualify as an Approved Party; a fee will normally be charged to the party by BRE Global Limited. BRE Global Limited will not unreasonably refuse such applications. BRE Global Limited accepts no responsibility for any unauthorized use or distribution by others of this Program Document and may take legal action to prevent such unauthorized use or distribution.

Copyright

The information and images contained in this document are the property of BRE Global Limited unless explicitly stated to the contrary and are protected by copyright laws. The information and images contained in this document may be downloaded and printed without requiring specific permission but remains the intellectual property, technical know-how and copyrighted material of BRE Global Limited. Such material is not to be used in a derogatory manner, in a misleading context or for commercial purposes. Where such material is being issued to others, the source including the web address and copyright status must be acknowledged. We may require you to register your details before downloading certain information or documents.

Trademarks

BRE, BRE Global, BREEAM are all trademarks owned by either BRE or BRE Global Limited and may not be used without written permission from BRE or BRE Global Limited.

Uncontrolled copy if printed. Valid on day of printing only.

Table of Contents

Terms and conditions **1**

List of tables 10

List of figures 11

About the BRE Group **12**

About this Program Document **13**

Changes to this BREEAM Program Document **13**

Introduction to BREEAM **14**

BREEAM USA In-Use **17**

Scope of BREEAM In-Use 21

Scoring and rating of BREEAM USA In-Use assessed assets 24

Evidence requirements for BREEAM In-Use 29

Issue and credit structure 36

Building Details **38**

Asset 38

Basic Building Details 39

Asset Dimensions 40

Asset Type 42

Part 1: Asset Performance **43**

Management **44**

Health and Wellbeing **44**

Asset Performance HEA 01 – Glazing 45

Asset Performance HEA 02 – Glare control 46

Asset Performance HEA 03 – Thermal control 48

Asset Performance HEA 04 – Ventilation controls 50

Asset Performance HEA 05 – Minimizing Legionella contamination risk 51

Asset Performance HEA 06 – Drinking water provisions 53

Asset Performance HEA 07 – Indoor and/or outdoor space 55

Asset Performance HEA 08 – Illuminance levels (Lux) 57

Asset Performance HEA 09 – Lighting control 58

Asset Performance HEA 10 – Inclusive design 60

Asset Performance HEA 11 – Ventilation requirements 62

Energy 64
Asset Energy Calculator Guidance 66
Asset Performance ENE 01 – Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC) 71
Asset Performance ENE 02 – Ventilation strategy 73
Asset Performance ENE 03 – Heat loss 74
Asset Performance ENE 04 – Building pressure/air leakage test 75
Asset Performance ENE 05 – Heating 77
Asset Performance ENE 06 – Boiler efficiency 79
Asset Performance ENE 07 – Heat pump efficiency 80
Asset Performance ENE 08 – Fuel usage for heat generation 81
Asset Performance ENE 09 – Heat distribution 82
Asset Performance ENE 10 – Heat emitter type 83
Asset Performance ENE 11 – Mechanical and electrical heating equipment 85
Asset Performance ENE 12 – Cooling system 87
Asset Performance ENE 13 – Efficiency of cooling generator 89
Asset Performance ENE 14 – Cooling distribution 90
Asset Performance ENE 15 – Air distributed cooling system 92
Asset Performance ENE 16 – Refrigerant cooling system 93
Asset Performance ENE 17 – Cooling emitter type 94
Asset Performance ENE 18 – Glazing 96
Asset Performance ENE 19 – Mechanical and electrical cooling equipment 97
Asset Performance ENE 20 – Specific fan power 98
Asset Performance ENE 21 – Duct and air handling leakage tests 99
Asset Performance ENE 22 – Mechanical and electrical ventilation equipment 101
Asset Performance ENE 23 – Domestic water heating 102
Asset Performance ENE 24 – Domestic water heating energy sources 103
Asset Performance ENE 25 – High frequency ballast 104
Asset Performance ENE 26 – Internal lighting types 105
Asset Performance ENE 27 – Automatic lighting controls 107
Asset Performance ENE 28 – Occupancy sensors 108
Asset Performance ENE 29 – Benchmarking 109
Asset Performance ENE 30 – On-site renewables 110
Transport 113
Asset Performance TRA 01 – Cyclist facilities 114
Asset Performance TRA 02 – Proximity to public transport 117

Asset Performance TRA 03 – Proximity to amenities 119
Asset Performance TRA 04 – Pedestrian and cyclist safety 121

Water 122

Asset Performance WAT 01 – Water metering 123
Asset Performance WAT 02 – Water efficient equipment: Toilets 125
Asset Performance WAT 03 – Water efficient equipment: Urinals 127
Asset Performance WAT 04 – Water efficient equipment: Hand washing sinks 129
Asset Performance WAT 05 – Water efficient equipment: Showers 131
Asset Performance WAT 06 – Water efficient equipment: Appliances 133
Asset Performance WAT 07 – Leak detection system 135
Asset Performance WAT 08 – Leak prevention 136
Asset Performance WAT 09 – Isolation valves 137
Asset Performance WAT 10 – Reducing utility-supplied water consumption 139

Materials 140

Asset Performance MAT 01 – Condition survey 141
Asset Performance MAT 02 – Security advice 143
Asset Performance MAT 03 – Intruder alarm system 145
Asset Performance MAT 04 – Alarm system monitoring 146
Asset Performance MAT 05 – Natural hazards 147
Asset Performance MAT 06 – Future adaptation 149
Asset Performance MAT 07 – Designing for robustness 150

Waste 151

Asset Performance WST 01 – Storage of operational waste 152

Land Use and Ecology 154

Asset Performance LE 01 – Planted area 155
Asset Performance LE 02 – Ecological features of planted area 157

Pollution 158

Asset Performance POL 01 – Pollution prevention 159
Asset Performance POL 02 – Flood risk assessment 161
Asset Performance POL 03 – Surface water runoff impact mitigation 163
Asset Performance POL 04 – Impact of refrigerants 165
Asset Performance POL 05 – Refrigerant leak detection systems 168
Asset Performance POL 06 – NO_x emissions 170

Part 2: Building Management 171

Management 172

Building Management MAN 01 – Building user guide 173

Building Management MAN 02 – Building user education 175

Building Management MAN 03 – Building user information 176

Building Management MAN 04 – Operation and maintenance manuals 177

Building Management MAN 05 – Maintenance procedures 179

Building Management MAN 06 – Maintenance policy 181

Building Management MAN 07 – Environmental policies and responsibilities 183

Building Management MAN 08 – Environmental policies 185

Building Management MAN 09 – Operating procedures: Energy reduction 187

Building Management MAN 10 – Ventilation system leak testing 189

Building Management MAN 11 – Green lease 190

Building Management MAN 12 – Building management system review 192

Building Management MAN 13 – Functional adaptability 193

Health and Wellbeing 194

Building Management HEA 12 – Fresh air rates 195

Building Management HEA 13 – Operating temperature 197

Building Management HEA 14 – Internal environment: CO_2 monitoring 198

Building Management HEA 15 – Internal environment: CO monitoring 199

Building Management HEA 16 – Internal environment: NO_x monitoring 201

Building Management HEA 17 – Internal environment: Refurbishment/renovation/redecoration 203

Building Management HEA 18 – Volatile organic compounds 204

Building Management HEA 19 – Control of chemicals 206

Building Management HEA 20 – Acoustic conditions 207

Building Management HEA 21 – Deep cleaning 209

Building Management HEA 22 – Legionella management 210

Building Management HEA 23 – Occupant satisfaction: Surveying 212

Building Management HEA 24 – Occupant satisfaction: Feedback 214

Energy 215

Operational Energy Calculator Guidance 216

Building Management ENE 31 – Energy consumption start date 218

Building Management ENE 32 – Energy consumption end date 219

Building Management ENE 33 – Electricity consumption 220

Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption 221

Building Management ENE 35 – Propane consumption 222

Building Management ENE 36 – Gas oil consumption 223
Building Management ENE 37 – Solid fossil fuel consumption 224
Building Management ENE 38 – Biodiesel consumption 225
Building Management ENE 39 – Biogas consumption 226
Building Management ENE 40 – Wood/Waste wood consumption 227
Building Management ENE 41 – District heating consumption 228
Building Management ENE 42 – Carbon intensity district heating 230
Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption 231
Building Management ENE 44 – Carbon intensity district cooling 232
Building Management ENE 45 – Electricity exported 233
Building Management ENE 46 – Non-standard energy uses 234
Building Management ENE 47, 50, 53, 56 & 59 – Non-standard energy use 236
Building Management ENE 48, 51, 54, 57 & 60 – Non-standard energy consumption 238
Building Management ENE 49, 52, 55, 58 & 61 – Non-standard energy consumption floor area 239
Building Management ENE 62 – Energy consumption monitoring 240
Building Management ENE 63 – Energy consumption data use 241
Building Management ENE 64 – Sub-metering: Main energy sources 242
Building Management ENE 65 – Sub-metering: Other energy sources 243
Building Management ENE 66 – Sub-metering: Tenanted areas 245

Transport 246

Water 246

Building Management WAT 11 – Annual consumption 247
Building Management WAT 12 – Water consumption: Monitoring and reporting 248
Building Management WAT 13 – Drinking water provision 250
Building Management WAT 14 – Refurbishment policy: Water efficiency 251
Building Management WAT 15 – Water system maintenance strategy 252
Building Management WAT 16 – Water recycling 253
Building Management WAT 17 – Water extraction 254

Materials 255

Building Management MAT 08 – Condition survey 256
Building Management MAT 09 – Sustainable procurement policy 258
Building Management MAT 10 – Sustainable procurement initiatives 260
Building Management MAT 11 – Fire risk assessment 261
Building Management MAT 12 – Fire risk management 262

Building Management MAT 13 – Emergency plan 263
Building Management MAT 14 – Natural hazard management 265
Waste 267
Land Use and Ecology 267
Building Management LE 03 – Ecology report 268
Building Management LE 04 – Biodiversity action plan 270
Building Management LE 05 – External landscaping/maintenance 272
Pollution 274
Building Management POL 07 – Night time light pollution 275
Building Management POL 08 – Chemical storage 277
Building Management POL 09 – Secondary containment 278
Building Management POL 10 – Light-liquid separators 279
Building Management POL 11 – Refrigerants 280
Building Management POL 12 – Land contamination mitigation 282
Building Management POL 13 – Emergency preparedness and response 284
Building Management POL 14 – Complaints procedure 285
Part 3: Occupier Management 286
Management 287
Occupier Management MAN 14 – Environmental management policy 288
Occupier Management MAN 15 – Environmental management issues 290
Occupier Management MAN 16 – Environmental management implementation 292
Occupier Management MAN 17 – Environmental objectives 295
Occupier Management MAN 18 – Organizational performance review 297
Occupier Management MAN 19 – Sustainability report 299
Occupier Management MAN 20 – Green lease 301
Health and Wellbeing 302
Occupier Management HEA 25 – Occupier satisfaction 303
Occupier Management HEA 26 – Health and well-being management targets 305
Occupier Management HEA 27 – Health and well-being management objectives 308
Occupier Management HEA 28 – View out 309
Occupier Management HEA 29 – Communal rest areas 311
Energy 312
Occupier Management ENE 67 – Energy policy 313

Occupier Management ENE 68 – Energy management arrangements 314
Occupier Management ENE 69 – Trends in energy performance data 316
Occupier Management ENE 70 – Energy objectives 317
Occupier Management ENE 71 – Energy savings 318

Transport 319

Occupier Management TRA 05 – Transport requirements 320
Occupier Management TRA 06 – Transport management arrangements 322
Occupier Management TRA 07 – Local public transport 324
Occupier Management TRA 08 – Local amenities 325
Occupier Management TRA 09 – Transport objectives 326
Occupier Management TRA 10 – Transport impact of commuting 327
Occupier Management TRA 11 – Transport impact of business travel 329
Occupier Management TRA 12 – Transport impact of goods delivery 331

Water 332

Occupier Management WAT 18 – Water management: Staff engagement 333
Occupier Management WAT 19 – Water monitoring & management 334
Occupier Management WAT 20 – Water management targets 336
Occupier Management WAT 21 – Water consumption 337

Materials 338

Occupier Management MAT 15 – Material procurement: Selection 339
Occupier Management MAT 16 – Material procurement: Management arrangements 341
Occupier Management MAT 17 – Supplier approval 344
Occupier Management MAT 18 – Supplier quality policy 345
Occupier Management MAT 19 – Supplier environmental management 347
Occupier Management MAT 20 – Supplier quality management (third party certified) 349
Occupier Management MAT 21 – Supplier environmental management (third party certified) 351
Occupier Management MAT 22 – Supplier responsible sourcing standard (third party certified) 352
Occupier Management MAT 23 – Material procurement targets 354

Waste 355

Occupier Management WST 02 – Waste management: The waste hierarchy 356
Occupier Management WST 03 – Waste management: Recycling and reclamation 358
Occupier Management WST 04 – Waste management arrangements 360
Occupier Management WST 05 – Waste monitoring 362
Occupier Management WST 06 – Waste performance 363

Occupier Management WST 07 – Waste management objectives 364
Occupier Management WST 08 – Waste sent to landfill 365
Occupier Management WST 09 – Waste diverted from landfill 366
Occupier Management WST 10 – Waste sent for incineration 367
Land Use and Ecology 368
Occupier Management LE 06 – Ecology/biodiversity enhancement 369
Pollution 370
Occupier Management POL 15 – Pollution management 371
Occupier Management POL 16 – Pollution prevention arrangements 373
Occupier Management POL 17 – Pollution prevention targets 376
Appendix A: Offices 377
Introduction 378
HEA 26A – Health and Wellbeing 379
ENE 68A – Energy 380
TRA 06A – Transport 382
WAT 19A – Water 383
MAT 16A – Materials 384
WST 04A – Waste 385
POL 16A – Pollution 387
Schedule of changes to this BREEAM Program Document 388

List of tables

Table 1: BREEAM In-Use sustainability categories 17
Table 2: Asset types that can be assessed using BREEAM USA In-Use 21
Table 3: Client type that each BREEAM In-Use part is aimed at 22
Table 4: BREEAM In-Use environmental category weightings 24
Table 5: BREEAM In-Use rating benchmarks 25
Table 6: BREEAM USA In-Use Part 3 minimum standards 26
Table 7: Example BREEAM USA In-Use Part 2 calculation 28
Table 8: BREEAM Evidence principles 32
Table 9: Evidence types 34
Table 10: Energy end use components and subcomponents 66
Table 11: End use component weighting factors 69
Table 12:Water consumption baseline levels of appliances. 133

BREEAM® USA

List of figures

Figure 1: BREEAM programs by built environment lifecycle stages..... 19
Figure 2: Multi-tenanted asset with common area assessed only..... 23
Figure 3: Multi-tenanted asset with common area and spaces B, D and E assessed..... 23
Figure 4: Asset energy calculation flowchart 70

BREEAM® USA

About the BRE Group

BRE Group

BRE was set up in 1921 as the Building Research Station (BRS). This became the Building Research Establishment (BRE) in 1972 and since being privatized in 1997, we have called ourselves simply 'BRE'.

BRE is a world leading building science center that generates new knowledge through research. This is used to create products, tools and standards that drive positive change across the built environment. BRE helps its government and private sector clients meet the significant environmental, social and economic challenges they face in delivering homes, buildings and communities.

BRE Global

BRE Global Limited (incorporating LPCB & BREEAM) is an independent third-party approvals body offering certification of fire, security and sustainability products and services to an international market. BRE Global's product testing and approvals are carried out by recognized experts in our world-renowned testing laboratories. BRE Global Limited is custodian of a number of world leading brands including:

- LPCB for the approval of fire and security products and services, listed in the Red Books.
- BREEAM the world's leading environmental assessment method for buildings, sets the standard for best practice in sustainable design and has become the de-facto measure of a building's environmental performance.

BRE Global Limited is an independent third-party approvals body that offers certification, training and licensing services for BREEAM rating systems to the USA market.

About this Program Document

This document is the BREEAM USA In-Use Technical Manual. It describes an environmental performance standard against which existing, commercial assets can be assessed and achieve a BREEAM USA In-Use rating. The BREEAM USA In-Use Technical Manual is the BREEAM In-Use International program that has been adapted to reflect differences in US standards, units, industry practices and language. This ensures that the international comparability of the program is maintained.

The Program Document and the information detailed within is intended for use by trained, qualified and licensed Assessors in accordance with the procedural and operational requirements of BREEAM USA (as described in the BREEAM USA Operations Manual (PD101)) and the terms and conditions of a BREEAM USA In-Use license. This document should be used by clients and those who are not licensed BREEAM USA In-Use Assessors for reference purposes only.

Changes to this BREEAM Program Document

This document can be subject to change and can be re-released by BRE Global Ltd. A schedule of the publication date for each issue of this document is provided below.

It is important to note that in general a reissue does not result in changes, deletions or additions to the main assessment criteria or assessment issues. Fundamental changes to assessment criteria are typically made as part of a formal program update, resulting in a new BREEAM program version.

A list of additions, deletions and alterations made to the previous issue is available in the Schedule of changes to this BREEAM Program Document section of this manual.

Issue Type	Issue No.	Date of Issue
Launch	1.0	August 1, 2016
Reissue	1.1	August 1, 2017
Reissue	**2.0 (current)**	**April 8, 2019**

Introduction to BREEAM

BREEAM (Building Research Establishment's Environmental Assessment Method) is the world's first sustainability rating program for the built environment and has contributed much to the focus globally on sustainability in building design, construction and use. BREEAM is now an international standard that is locally adapted, operated and applied through a network of international operators, Assessors and industry professionals. Through its application and use BREEAM helps clients measure and reduce the environmental impacts of their buildings and in doing so create higher value, lower risk assets.

Aims of BREEAM

- To mitigate the life cycle impacts of buildings on the environment.
- To enable buildings to be recognized according to their environmental benefits.
- To provide a credible, environmental label for buildings.
- To stimulate demand and create value for sustainable buildings, building products and supply chains.

Objectives of BREEAM

- To provide market recognition of buildings with a low environmental impact.
- To ensure best environmental practice is incorporated in the planning, design, construction and operation of buildings and the wider built environment.
- To define a robust, cost effective performance standard surpassing that required by regulations.
- To challenge the market to provide innovative, cost effective solutions that minimize the environmental impact of buildings.
- To raise awareness amongst owners, occupants, designers and operators of the benefits and value of buildings with a reduced life cycle impact on the environment.
- To allow organizations to demonstrate progress towards corporate environmental objectives.

BREEAM is developed and operated to meet the following underlying principles:

- Ensure **environmental quality** through an accessible, holistic and balanced measure of environmental impacts.
- Use **quantified measures** for determining environmental quality.
- Adopt a **flexible approach** that encourages and rewards positive outcomes, avoiding prescribed solutions.
- Use **robust science** and **best practice** as the basis for quantifying and calibrating a cost effective and rigorous performance standard for defining environmental quality.
- Reflect the **social and economic benefits** of meeting the environmental objectives covered.
- Provide a **common international framework** of assessment that is tailored to meet the 'local' context including regulation, climate and sector.

- **Integrate building professionals** in the development and operational processes to ensure wide understanding and accessibility.
- Adopt **third party certification** to ensure independence, credibility and consistency of the label.
- Adopt **existing industry tools**, practices and other standards wherever possible to support developments in policy and technology, build on existing skills and understanding and minimize costs.
- Align technically and operationally with **relevant international standards.**
- Engage with a representative range of **stakeholders** to inform on-going development in accordance with the underlying principles and the pace of change in performance standards (accounting for policy, regulation and market capability).

The aims, objectives and principles of BREEAM are embodied within a Core Technical Standard owned and managed by BRE Global Limited. This is applied through a suite of BREEAM programs covering aspects of the built environment life cycle. These programs are operated across a range of countries by BRE Global Limited, Licensees and select local operators, known as National Scheme Operators (NSOs). For a full list of BREEAM National Scheme Operators and Programs for countries other than the United States, please visit www.breeam.com.

The BRE Global BREEAM Programs

BRE Global Limited develops and operates a number of BREEAM programs (also known as schemes), each designed to assess the environmental performance of buildings at various stages in the life cycle, including:

- **BREEAM Communities** for the master-planning of a larger community of buildings
- **BREEAM New Construction** for new build, residential and commercial buildings
- **BREEAM In-Use** for existing commercial buildings in-use
- **BREEAM Refurbishment and Fit-Out** for residential and commercial buildings

Assessments undertaken in these programs outside of the United States and NSO territories are operated by BRE Global Limited. For further information on how to get certified against these programs, please visit www.breeam.com or contact BRE Global.

BREEAM USA Programs

BRE Global Limited operates BREEAM In-Use in the United States, known as BREEAM USA In-Use.

Independent Assessors, trained, qualified and licensed by BRE Global Limited can undertake a BREEAM In-Use assessment using this Program Document and associated reporting and calculation tools for assets.

Once an assessment is complete and quality assured, BRE Global Limited will issue a BREEAM USA In-Use certificate. The BREEAM USA In-Use certificate provides formal verification that the Assessor has completed an assessment for an asset in accordance with the requirements of the program and its quality standards and procedures.

A BREEAM USA In-Use certificate provides assurance to any interested party that a BREEAM USA rating, at the time of certification, accurately reflects its performance against the BREEAM USA In-Use standard.

Anyone wishing to verify the BREEAM USA rating of an asset can do so by either checking its BREEAM USA certificate, which will contain the certification mark, or by searching the BREEAM buildings listings on GreenBookLive, the global database for all BREEAM assessments (www.greenbooklive.com).

Assessments against BREEAM Programs other than BREEAM In-Use can be carried out using the International versions of the applicable program. Please visit www.breeam.com for further information.

Ensuring quality and consistency

All BREEAM programs are developed and operated by National Scheme Operators (NSOs) in accordance with the Code for a Sustainable Built Environment. The Code for a Sustainable Built Environment is a set of strategic principles and requirements which define an integrated approach to the design, management, evaluation and certification of the environmental, social and economic impacts of the built environment.

The Code is interpreted through the BREEAM Core Process and Technical Standards. These linked documents set out the requirements that a compliant scheme must meet in order to be affiliated with the Code. The Standards ensure that a common scientific and performance basis is used by all compliant schemes operated by NSOs, while ensuring that these are relevant to local demands, standards and practices.

The Code and associated standards are developed and maintained by BRE Global Limited with direction from the BREEAM Strategy Board, under the auspices of the BRE Global Governing Board.

To ensure competence, impartiality and performance capability, all National Scheme Operators are required to maintain scheme operations to internationally agreed standards and seek accreditation from a national accreditation body.

BRE Global Limited is a United Kingdom Accreditation Service (UKAS) accredited certification body (No. 0007). The scope of our accreditation to ISO/IEC 17065 ‘Conformity assessment - Requirements for bodies certifying products, processes and services’ can be verified on the UKAS website, and includes BREEAM USA PD100 ‘Environmental assessments of the built environment – certification of the process’.

BRE Global Ltd is also certified to ISO 9001 ‘Quality management systems – Requirements’ for all its BREEAM related activities.

As an accredited certification body, BRE Global Limited maintains an open and accountable governance structure. The operation of BREEAM is overseen by an independent Governing Body and a Standing Panel for Peer & Market Review.

The Governing Body represents stakeholder interests to ensure, amongst other things, that BREEAM operations are independent and impartial, processes operate correctly and customers are treated fairly.

The Standing Panel provides BRE Global Limited with access to a range of experts that can review the core BREEAM standards and programs to ensure their robustness from a scientific, technical and market perspective as well as ensuring the development of the standards and programs is open to greater external and independent scrutiny.

BREEAM USA In-Use

The BREEAM USA In-Use program (referred to as BREEAM In-Use from this point onwards) is a performance-based assessment method and certification program for existing commercial buildings.

The primary aim of BREEAM In-Use is to mitigate the operational impacts of existing assets on the environment in a robust and cost-effective manner. The program provides a holistic approach that enables assets to be assessed and benchmarked across a large range of environmental issues (management, health and wellbeing, energy, transport, water, materials, waste, land use and ecology, and pollution).

The BREEAM In-Use assessment process is broken down into three Parts:

- Part 1 – Asset Performance: the performance of the asset's built form, construction, fixtures, fittings and installed services
- Part 2 – Building Management: the management of the asset
- Part 3 – Occupier Management: the management of building users and services

A Part 1 or Part 2 assessment can be conducted in isolation. A Part 3 assessment is recommended to be undertaken in combination with a Part 2 assessment as the score achieved for Part 2 feeds into the score for Part 3. Clients are, however encouraged to assess against all 3 Parts to assess the overall environmental impact of their asset.

The final outcome of a BREEAM In-Use assessment is a certified BREEAM In-Use rating for the Part against which an assessment is undertaken. This certified BREEAM In-Use rating reflects the asset's performance across the environmental categories listed in Table 1. It enables the performance of the asset to be assessed but most importantly, the knowledge obtained from such a comprehensive assessment allows the asset's performance to be optimized through informed management decisions. By enabling on-going assessments, BREEAM In-Use encourages continual improvement.

Table 1: BREEAM In-Use sustainability categories

Environmental Category	Purpose
Management	To encourage the adoption of sustainable management practices related to operational activities to ensure that robust sustainability objectives are set, monitored and regularly updated.
Health & Wellbeing	To manage, monitor and increase the comfort and health and safety of asset occupants, visitors and other users within the asset.
Energy	To manage and monitor energy consumption and to encourage the use of equipment that supports the sustainable use and management of energy in the asset.
Transport	To recognize the implementation of policies that record the impacts related to transport, the proximity of local amenities and improve the ability of stakeholders to utilize alternative means of transportation.

Environmental Category	Purpose
Water	To manage and monitor water consumption in the operation of the asset and its site to encourage sustainable water consumption.
Materials	To manage and monitor the environmental impact of procurement as well as recognizing the risks to the asset and its occupiers associated with security, fire and other naturally occurring events.
Waste	To encourage and recognize the implementation of policies and systems that reduces waste production and improve levels of segregation and recycling.
Land Use & Ecology	To manage and monitor the impact that activities undertaken on the asset's site have on the local environment and encourage sustainable land use, habitat protection and creation.
Pollution	To prevent, manage, monitor and control pollution associated with the assets location and operation.

Relationship to other BREEAM programs

BREEAM In-Use assesses the In-Use phase of a building's lifecycle as outlined in Figure 1. The construction of new buildings, new infrastructure or community projects, and existing building refurbishment and fit-outs cannot be assessed under the BREEAM In-Use program. Projects in the United States requiring assessment during these life cycle stages should be assessed under the relevant international BREEAM program indicated in Figure 1. Certification through the BREEAM International programs can be sought through BRE Global.

BREEAM In-Use has been developed with 3 distinct parts, each addressing a different aspect of an existing building's performance. Once a building has been constructed, the asset performance can be assessed with Part 1 of BREEAM In-Use. Undertaking this assessment will provide the Client with an overview of the actual performance of the asset's fixtures, services and built form and can be used to inform refurbishment and/or tuning and re-commissioning processes.

As the In-Use phase of buildings lasts for multiple years, BREEAM In-Use has been developed to assess the on-going performance of existing buildings and identify opportunities for improvements in a continuous cycle. A BREEAM In-Use assessment can therefore be used to inform where and when refurbishments should be carried out and how these perform against the targets once completed. The BREEAM Refurbishment and Fit-out program can then be used to assess and certify the delivery of a sustainable refurbishment and fit-out.

Figure 1: BREEAM programs by built environment lifecycle stages

How to apply the BREEAM USA In-Use program

This BREEAM USA In-Use program document is a technical manual which has been created to:

- Enable qualified and licensed BREEAM USA In-Use Assessors to complete BREEAM USA In-Use assessments and determine a rating.
- Enable BRE Global Limited to complete quality assurance reviews of a BREEAM USA In-Use licensed Assessor's assessment report, in accordance with the standards to which BRE Global Limited has aligned operations.
- As a reference for clients whose proposed asset/management practices are assessed against BREEAM USA In-Use.

The technical manual is split into five sections:

1. The **Scope** section describes the types of assets and stages of assessment that this version of the BREEAM USA In-Use Program can be applied to. The Scope section can be used by clients and BREEAM USA In-Use Assessors to check whether this is the correct BREEAM program to use for their project.
2. The **Scoring and rating** section illustrates how an asset's assessed performance is measured and rated. It outlines the BREEAM In-Use rating level benchmarks, the minimum standards for Part 3, and the BREEAM In-Use environmental category weightings. Furthermore, this section includes a description of the BREEAM In-Use assessment issues and 'credits' and how performance against these is calculated and expressed as a BREEAM In-Use rating. This unverified rating would need to be assessed by a licensed BREEAM USA In-Use Assessor for the asset to achieve formal certification.
3. The **Evidence for BREEAM USA In-Use** section provides guidance to BREEAM USA In-Use Assessors on the various types and forms of evidence to demonstrate compliance with BREEAM In-Use issues. This section also includes a description of why BREEAM requires an auditable trail of evidence and a table of general types of evidence that are typically required and used as a form of compliance.
4. The **Building Details** section includes an explanation of building and asset related data that must be completed prior to undertaking a BREEAM In-Use assessment. The data that is filled out within this section will assist in determining energy benchmarks and scores and will be used when a certificate is requested.

5. The **Assessment criteria** section includes the BREEAM In-Use assessment issues, categorized in 9 environmental categories divided over the three Parts. Within each issue the levels of performance (the available credits) against which the asset will be assessed are outlined. By using the appropriate evidence, a corresponding number of available BREEAM In-Use credits can be awarded.

   Several issues in Part 3 of the BREEAM USA In-Use assessment process have minimum standards. This means that in order to achieve a particular BREEAM In-Use rating, specific credits or criteria must be achieved (BREEAM In-Use minimum standards are outlined in the **Scoring and rating BREEAM USA In-Use** assessed assets section).

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Scope of BREEAM In-Use

The BREEAM USA In-Use program is used to assess the environmental performance of existing (in-use) commercial assets.

BREEAM USA In-Use has been developed for use in the United States only. Assets outside the United States (including Canada) must use BREEAM In-Use International or the country specific BREEAM rating system run by a National Scheme Operator (NSO). For more information on how to assess assets outside of the United States, please visit www.breeam.com.

Asset types that can be assessed

The asset types that can be assessed under each Part of the BREEAM USA In-Use standard are as follows:

Table 2: Asset types that can be assessed using BREEAM USA In-Use

Part 1: Asset Performance	All commercial asset types that meet eligibility criteria requirements
Part 2: Building Management	
Part 3: Occupier Management	Offices only

Eligibility criteria

For all asset types that can be assessed using BREEAM USA In-Use, the eligibility criteria listed below must also be met:

For an assessment of any Part:

- The asset must be a complete and finished structure.
- The asset must contain occupied space(s). Occupied space is a room/rooms or space within the asset that is likely to be continuously occupied for 30 minutes or more per day by a building user).

  For a Part 1 assessment that has not yet been occupied, the asset must contain space that is designated to be occupied.
- An asset does not have to include the whole building; it could include just part of a building or a single floor. In such cases, the scope of the BREEAM In-Use assessment must include all relevant amenity and service areas.
- An asset cannot normally include more than one building. The only exception is where several buildings meet the following criteria:
  - Connected to and share common services to meet the comfort and sanitary demands of the occupants (for example: heating, ventilation, cooling and hot water).
  - The buildings have the same building function, similar performance, are of the same design and age.
  - Building management and maintenance policies are the same across the buildings.
  - The buildings share the same building envelope specification (the physical separator between the interior and exterior of a building).

Where floor areas are shared by more than one organization, it must be assessed as one asset for Part 1 and Part 2. For a Part 3 assessment, each occupying organization would have to undertake an assessment.

- The asset must comply with all relevant regulation/legislation in its location including (but not limited to): environmental and health and safety legislation.

For an assessment of Part 2 and/or Part 3

- The asset must have been occupied for at least one year prior to the start of the assessment.
- Consumption data related to all spaces included in the assessment must be available for at least one year prior to the start of the assessment. This includes (but is not limited to): energy, water, plus transport and waste data for Part 3 assessments. For energy consumption, this must include both electrical and non-electrical data. Please refer to the Part 2 Energy Section for further information.

Multi-tenanted assessments

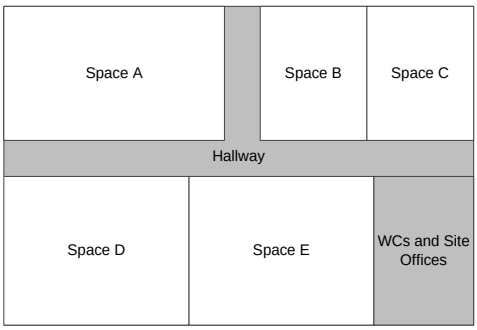
The client type each BREEAM In-Use Part is aimed at, and how these Parts can be assessed against within multi-tenanted assets is outlined in Table 3.

Table 3: Client type that each BREEAM In-Use part is aimed at

Part	Client type	Multi-tenanted assessment
1: Asset Performance	Building owner	The rating can be based on: a. Common areas* that a facility/building manager is responsible for OR b. Common areas AND tenanted areas within the asset that are managed by the asset's facility/building manager Where option b is selected: The Assessor needs to collate the required data from each space type and the final score would be determined by the space with the lowest score. The assessment must include evidence of a representative sample of the tenants to ensure that central management practices are in place and fully implemented in line with the assessment criteria. **Note**: The evidence provided for these samples must be representative of the asset and must include at least one sample of each type of space use within the asset. For example, where there are: shops, offices and food space uses within the asset, the sample must include evidence that central management practices are in place for a representative sample of each of these space uses.
2: Building Management	Facility / building management	
3: Occupier Management	Occupier	Multi-tenanted buildings cannot be assessed as a single asset under Part 3, as management practices are likely to differ for each tenant. Therefore, a Part 3 assessment must be undertaken for each tenant.

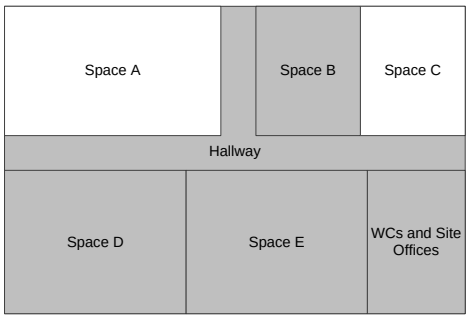
*Common areas are facilities and/or access that is not owned or controlled by any one individual tenant, but used by all. These common areas are typically managed and maintained by the development's owner, i.e. landlord or their managing agent. Examples of common areas include: an atrium, stairwells, main entrance foyers/reception and external landscaped areas.

Example situations for multi-tenanted assets can be seen in Figure 2 and Figure 3.



(Assessed area in grey)

Figure 2: Multi-tenanted asset with common area assessed only.



(Assessed area in grey)

Figure 3: Multi-tenanted asset with common area and spaces B, D and E assessed.

Data collection and use

Real estate owners, occupiers, developers and funders around the world are facing ever-increasing demands to address the demands of Corporate Social Responsibility and hence the need for greater sustainability of existing buildings they own, manage and occupy.

By gathering, analyzing and sharing data trends related to the environmental performance of these assets, BREEAM In-Use will help clients to develop a common understanding of how their assets perform, what measures can be taken to improve their performance and the cost benefit these measures give. Assessing an asset with BREEAM In-Use means a client can:

- Set key performance indicators for energy, water, waste and greenhouse gas performance.
- Understand the performance of assets within their portfolios.
- Benchmark individual assets within portfolios against similar assets in the United States and in other territories.
- Optimize the performance of their buildings through good management, maintenance and occupation policies and procedures.
- Set performance improvement targets and measure progress over time.
- Support BRE on the continuing development of BREEAM In-Use by identifying and improving best environmental performance of existing buildings.

Scoring and rating of BREEAM USA In-Use assessed assets

There are four elements that determine the overall performance of an In-Use asset assessed using BREEAM USA In-Use:

1. The environmental category weightings
2. The BREEAM In-Use rating level benchmarks
3. For a Part 3 assessment: the BREEAM In-Use minimum standards
4. The BREEAM In-Use assessment issues and credits

The way in which these elements combine to produce a BREEAM USA In-Use rating is summarized below.

Environmental category weightings

Environmental weightings are fundamental to any building environmental assessment method as they provide a means of defining, and therefore ranking, the relative impact of environmental issues. BREEAM uses an explicit weighting system derived from a combination of consensus-based weightings and ranking by a panel of experts. The outputs from this exercise are then used to determine the relative value of the environmental categories used in BREEAM and their contribution to the overall BREEAM score.

This weighting system is defined in greater detail within the BRE Global Core Process Standard (BES 5301) and it's supporting procedural documents. These form part of the overarching BREEAM Standard.

The weightings for each of the nine environmental categories included in the BREEAM In-Use program are outlined in Table 4.

Table 4: BREEAM In-Use environmental category weightings

Environmental Category	Weighting		
	Part 1	Part 2	Part 3
Management	-	15%	12%
Health & Wellbeing	17%	15%	15%
Energy	26.5%	31.5%	19.5%
Transport	11.5%	-	18.5%
Water	8%	5.5%	3.5%
Materials	8.5%	7.5%	4.5%
Waste	5%	-	11.5%
Land Use & Ecology	9.5%	12.5%	5%
Pollution	14%	13%	10.5%
Total	100%	100%	100%

BREEAM In-Use rating benchmarks

The BREEAM rating benchmarks for projects assessed using BREEAM In-Use are outlined in Table 5.

Table 5: BREEAM In-Use rating benchmarks

BREEAM In-Use Rating	% score	Star rating
Outstanding	≥85	★★★★★★
Excellent	≥70 to <85	★★★★★
Very Good	≥55 to <70	★★★★
Good	≥40 to <55	★★★
Pass	≥25 to <40	★★
Acceptable	≥10 to <25	★
Unclassified	<10	-

The BREEAM In-Use rating benchmarks enable a client and all other stakeholders to compare the performance of the asset with other existing assets, including those within a portfolio.

An unclassified BREEAM In-Use rating represents performance that is non-compliant with BREEAM In-Use, failing to meet either the BREEAM In-Use minimum standards for key environmental issues or the overall threshold score required for formal BREEAM In-Use certification.

Minimum standards

To maintain a flexible system, BREEAM In-Use adopts a 'balanced scorecard' approach to the assessment and rating of asset performance. This means that, to achieve a particular level of performance the majority of BREEAM In-Use credits can be traded. Non-compliance in one area can be off-set through compliance in another to achieve the target BREEAM In-Use rating.

However, to ensure that performance against fundamental environmental issues is not over-looked in pursuit of a particular rating, BREEAM In-Use for a Part 3 assessment only sets minimum standards of performance in key areas, such as energy, water and waste see Table 6.

It is important to bear in mind that these are minimum acceptable levels of performance and, in that respect they should not necessarily be viewed as levels that are representative of best practice for a BREEAM In-Use rating level.

The minimum standards in Part 3 must be met in order to achieve a given BREEAM In-Use rating. These minimum standards are contained within the answer options for the Part 3 (Occupier Management) assessment option and are outlined in Table 6. Regardless of the number of credits achieved in the Part 3 questionnaire, all minimum standards answer options related to a specific BREEAM In-Use rating must be met in order to achieve that rating. Where the minimum standards have not been met, the rating cannot be achieved even if enough credits have been gained to satisfy that rating band.

Table 6: BREEAM USA In-Use Part 3 minimum standards

	Minimum standards by BREEAM In-Use rating				
BREEAM issue	**Pass**	**Good**	**Very Good**	**Excellent**	**Outstanding**
MAN 14 – Environmental management policy	An environmental policy and/or procedure is under development		An environmental policy and/or procedure is in place and has been endorsed by the board of directors/senior management		
MAN 15 – Environmental management issues	None	Energy consumption, energy efficiency and supply including targets for reduction of energy consumption contained within an energy plan Waste reduction and management	Energy consumption, energy efficiency and supply including targets for reduction of energy consumption contained within an energy plan Waste reduction and management Pollution reduction/control		
MAN 19 – Sustainability report	None	Yes. Internal report which is not independently verified	Yes. Report is independently verified by a third-party assurance/verification body and is accessible to all internal and external stakeholders		
HEA 25 – Occupier satisfaction	None	Skills and capabilities of staff	Skills and capabilities of staff Workplace comfort	Skills and capabilities of staff Workplace comfort Continual professional development	
ENE 68 – Energy management arrangements	None	Energy consumption is actively recorded and monitored			

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

	Minimum standards by BREEAM In-Use rating				
BREEAM issue	**Pass**	**Good**	**Very Good**	**Excellent**	**Outstanding**
TRA 05 – Transport requirements	None			Staff commuting	
WAT 19 – Water management arrangements	Water consumption is recorded	Water consumption is recorded Water consumption is monitored			
MAT 15 – Material procurement issues	None				Responsible sourcing has been conducted in accordance with a procedure/guideline/standard that has international scope. Further information regarding responsible sourcing can be found on www.breeam.com
POL 15 – Pollution management	None		Use of effective incident response guidance/procedures in accordance to local, national, or international guidance/procedures		
POL 16 – Pollution prevention arrangements	None		Pollution risks, levels and incidents are recorded	Pollution risks, levels and incidents are recorded Regular inspection and maintenance of machinery / equipment operational in the organization's day-to-day activities to minimize the risk of pollution occurring	

Calculating an asset's BREEAM USA In-Use rating

A BREEAM USA In-Use Assessor must determine the BREEAM USA In-Use rating using the relevant reporting tool/software and in compliance with the requirements as set out in this technical manual. The process of determining a BREEAM USA In-Use rating for Part 1, Part 2 and Part 3 is outlined below and an example calculation for a Part 2 assessment included in

Table 7.

1. For each of BREEAM In-Use's environmental categories the number of 'credits' awarded is determined by the BREEAM USA In-Use Assessor in accordance with the criteria of each assessment issue (as detailed in the technical sections of this document).
2. The percentage of 'credits' achieved is then calculated for each section.
3. The percentage of 'credits' achieved in each section is then multiplied by the corresponding section weighting. This gives the overall environmental category score.
4. The section scores are then added together to give the overall BREEAM USA In-Use score for the Part against which the asset has been assessed.
5. The overall score is then compared to the BREEAM In-Use rating benchmark levels in order to view the relevant BREEAM rating that has been achieved.
6. For a Part 3 rating the total credits for each section included in both Part 2 and Part 3 assessments are combined. These scores are then weighted using Part 3 weightings to give a final 3 score. In addition, for a Part 3 rating, all minimum standards applicable to the rating level must have been met before BREEAM USA In-Use rating is achieved.

Table 7: Example BREEAM USA In-Use Part 2 calculation

BREEAM Section	Credits Achieved	Credits Available	% of Credits Achieved	Section Weighting	Section Score
Management	39	46	85%	0.15	12.75%
Health and Wellbeing	20	37	54%	0.15	8.1%
Energy	40	60	67%	0.315	21.11%
Transport	-	-	-	-	-
Water	14	26	54%	0.055	2.97%
Materials	16	20	80%	0.075	6%
Waste	-	-	-	-	-
Land Use and Ecology	6	10	60%	0.125	7.5%
Pollution	14	24	58%	0.13	7.54%
Final BREEAM score					65.97%
BREEAM Rating					VERY GOOD

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Evidence requirements for BREEAM In-Use

This section provides guidance to Assessors and project teams on the types of evidence required to demonstrate compliance with the BREEAM In-Use assessment criteria.

Why does BREEAM require evidence?

BREEAM is an assessment and certification program operated in accordance with international standards. Operating to international standards ensures that certification programs such as BREEAM are run in a consistent and reliable manner. The BREEAM Assessor's assessment report and the Quality Assurance process are fundamental to BREEAM, ensuring consistency of, and confidence in, the BREEAM rating awarded by the Assessor.

To maintain this consistency and credibility, all certification decisions are evidence-based, that is these must be based on verified and credible information that is traceable, relevant to and linked to the asset being assessed. This is not only important for ensuring compliance with the international standards to which BREEAM operates, but also in terms of managing risk to clients and BREEAM Assessors in the event that a certification outcome is challenged.

The BREEAM USA In-Use Assessor role

It is the BREEAM USA In-Use Assessor who determines the BREEAM USA In-Use rating. The assessment report and collated evidence are the formal records of an Assessor’s audit against the criteria defined in the Technical Manual for BREEAM USA In-Use. The BREEAM USA In-Use certificate issued by BRE Global Limited provides assurance that the process of producing the assessment report carried out by the BREEAM USA In-Use Assessor has been conducted in accordance with the requirements of the program. The purpose of the certificate is therefore to give confidence to the client in the Assessor’s performance and processes in determining a BREEAM In-Use rating.

It is the role of the BREEAM USA In-Use Assessor to gather project information and use it to assess performance against the BREEAM USA In-Use program in a competent and impartial manner. To award a BREEAM USA In-Use credit, the Assessor must be satisfied beyond reasonable doubt that the evidence gathered demonstrates unambiguous compliance with all relevant criteria defined in the BREEAM USA In-Use program. All evidence must be appropriately referenced and made available on request from BRE Global Limited for quality assurance checks.

Clear, ordered and well referenced evidence for each BREEAM USA In-Use issue and criterion facilitates efficient quality assurance and certification. The naming of the files that are submitted as evidence should at least include:

- BREEAM Asset Registration number
- Credit reference
- Description of file

For example:

- Naming of file: BIUS00002 _MAN08_EnvironPolicy(pdf)
- Copy in digital format: BIUS0003/HEA01/ExteriorPhoto1(jpg)

If large documents are used as evidence, the Assessor should highlight and reference the page or section of the document that demonstrates compliance.

If photos are used as evidence, these must clearly show how compliance with a criterion is sought and, where needed, be annotated and the photos must be date stamped.

Poor referencing of evidence could delay certification.

Evidence types

Evidence does not necessarily need to be prepared specifically for the purpose of the BREEAM In-Use assessment. In many instances, the BREEAM In-Use Assessor should be able to source readily available and prepared building information for the purpose of demonstrating compliance. For this reason, BREEAM In-Use aims to avoid being overly prescriptive on the type of evidence required, although some issues do require specific documents to be provided.

The BREEAM In-Use Assessor and client will find that many assessment issues require more than one piece or type of information to demonstrate compliance with one criterion, or alternatively, one piece of information may be sufficient to demonstrate compliance with multiple criteria.

To assist clients and the BREEAM In-Use Assessor in their collation of information for each assessment Part, the different types of documentation that can be used as evidence of compliance are listed below.

These evidence types fall broadly into two categories:

1. General evidence includes a broad list of defined information commonly produced for an asset. One or a mix of these types of information can be used to demonstrate compliance for one or more of the BREEAM In-Use issues and criteria, as deemed appropriate by the BREEAM In-Use Assessor for the assessment Part.

   General BREEAM In-Use evidence types are listed in Table 8 and are not necessarily specifically listed in the 'Evidence' section found within each BREEAM In-Use issue. Not all general evidence types will be appropriate for all issues and it is the responsibility of the BREEAM In-Use Assessor to ensure that the evidence provided specifically demonstrates compliance and is fully referenced.

2. Specific evidence is defined information that must be provided to verify compliance with the relevant criteria for the BREEAM In-Use credit sought. In all cases it will be the only type of evidence that will be accepted by BRE Global Limited for that particular issue/criterion. Where specific evidence is not provided and appropriately referenced in the assessment report, the Quality Assurance checks will identify a non-conformances and certification will be delayed.

   When required, specific evidence is defined and listed for each BREEAM In-Use issue in the 'Evidence' section. Although the 'Evidence' section lists the specific evidence required to demonstrate compliance with particular criteria, simply submitting this evidence may not be sufficient to demonstrate full compliance. Additional 'general evidence types' may also be required. Not all BREEAM In-Use issues will have specific evidence requirements.

Other types of evidence can still be used to demonstrate compliance where an information type provided by a client is not listed in Table 9 or the 'Evidence' section for each issue. To avoid non-conformities and delays in

certification, undefined alternative types of evidence must demonstrate credible, robust and traceable assurance to the same level as or better than, specified or general evidence types. If in doubt, please contact BRE Global Limited prior to accepting such evidence.

For some assessment issues, the BREEAM In-Use Assessor is likely to require a mixture of general and specific evidence types.

Evidence principles for BREEAM Assessors and BRE Global Limited Quality Assurance

As described above, where specific evidence is stated in the 'evidence' table within each assessment issue, this must be sourced and verified by the BREEAM In-Use Assessor.

Where no specific evidence has been listed for an issue or specific criterion, this means that there are potentially a number of different types of 'general' project information, as per Table 9 that can be sourced by the BREEAM In-Use Assessor and used to demonstrate compliance. It is the BREEAM In-Use Assessor's responsibility to source and verify the 'general evidence types' for each relevant criterion, where the client is claiming compliance and credits.

In determining the appropriateness of 'general evidence types' for each issue, the principles outlined in Table 8 must be considered by BREEAM Assessors. Where the 'general evidence types' meet the principles outlined in Table 8 and, where appropriate, the guidance provided in the 'robustness of evidence' section, such evidence is admissible for the purpose of the assessment and the BRE Global Ltd Quality Assurance checks.

These principles are not listed in a hierarchical order and are all equally important when considering which evidence type to submit to demonstrate compliance for each issue/criterion.

Table 8: BREEAM Evidence principles

	Summary	Principle	Objective	A question to ask to check
1	Evidence provided for all criteria for all credits sought	Evidence must demonstrate that ALL relevant* criteria and sub-criteria for each credit sought are achieved and where relevant, is provided to support compliance notes, definitions etc.	Completeness	Are all criteria and sub-criteria covered? Have all relevant definitions been addressed?
2	Unambiguous assessment	The assessment must demonstrate unambiguous compliance and the evidence must support this assessment. Evidence (and supporting notes) must clearly demonstrate to a 3rd party reviewer that the criteria have been met.	Independent review compatibility.	If a 3rd party (e.g. BRE Global Limited) reviewed my report with the submitted evidence, would they be able to confirm compliance and award the same credits I have?
3	Robust	a. When selecting the Evidence type, always ensure it is robust and is relevant to the stage of assessment. The selected Evidence contains all the relevant basic information, with the necessary constituent parts to be deemed robust. b. (see **Robustness of evidence** section for further details on both of the above)	Proof that evidence is robust and from a reliable source	Is this the most robust form of evidence available to demonstrate compliance with this criterion? Does the evidence contain all the relevant basic information? Is it fully auditable?
4	Use existing evidence	Use existing project information to demonstrate compliance. In most cases evidence shouldn't need to be 'created' for BREEAM compliance purposes.	Minimizes evidence and reduces time and cost of compliance.	Does robust evidence meeting the above principles already exist that I can use? If I need to ask for more evidence, is the project seeking credits where compliance is not adequately demonstrated?

*Where the Assessor deems specific criteria 'not relevant' to the assessment, a full justification should be collated and then submitted as a technical query, for review by BRE Global Limited.

Robustness of Evidence

Robust evidence provides confirmation that the assessment has been carried out correctly and the asset complies with the criteria for the BREEAM In-Use credits sought. The BREEAM In-Use Assessor should consider the following when gathering project information and evaluating whether the evidence provided is as 'robust' as possible:

- Is there more than one piece of evidence that could be used to demonstrate compliance?
- Is the chosen evidence the most robust and appropriate piece of evidence to demonstrate that a particular criterion has been achieved?

Any evidence submitted for a BREEAM USA In-Use assessment must be robust in terms of its source and its traceability. Below is a list of the minimum information the Assessor must expect to see, when certain types of evidence are submitted:

- **Communication records**: Any communication records used as evidence must provide clear confirmation of the site name, author's identity and role, the date and recipient(s) identity.
- **Formal letters of correspondence**: Must be on company/organization headed note-paper with a signature (electronic signatures are acceptable). Ideally letters should be a secured document.
- **Meeting minutes:** Must include date, location and attendee information (names, organizations and roles), along with a record of the meeting and agreed actions.
- **Drawings/site plans/maps/installation diagrams**: All of these documents must have the asset/site name, title of drawing, date, revision number and a scale.
- **Specification/building manual**: A specification/building manual must be clear that it relates to the project under assessment, and it must have a date and revision number. Where sections of a specification are provided, the Assessor should reference the extract and as a minimum submit the front page of the specification detailing the project name, revision number, and date. Specifications must always refer to as built or operational conditions.

  In addition to the list of minimum information, BREEAM strongly advises that Assessors have a formal, written site visit report which could act as standalone evidence. The report must contain the registration number, asset/site name, date, author and summary text to detail what was witnessed, confirming compliance. Assessors are encouraged to gather their own photographic evidence which can be used to support the text in the report, full details of what has been witnessed on site and which credits/criteria the particular comments relate to. Photographic evidence from other parties, e.g. Facilities Managers, are acceptable, but it is still the Assessor's responsibility to verify their accuracy. Photographs would not be required for each individual product, e.g. lamp fitting or faucet, a representative sample is sufficient.

For other types of evidence not listed, the Assessor should use Table 9 as a guide. As a minimum, the evidence used to assess compliance should always contain key information as the registration number, the project name, the author, date, revision numbers etc.

Table 9: Evidence types

Ref	Document/evidence type	Description/note
E1	Billing data	Evidence in the form of billing that supports the requirements that are outlined in the criteria. Billing data must be from the organization providing the billed services to the asset.
E2	BRE Global Limited correspondence reference number	For example, the reference number for a BRE Global Limited response to an Assessors technical query.
E3	BREEAM Assessor's site visit report	A formal report based on the BREEAM In-Use Assessor's own survey of the asset to confirm compliance with BREEAM In-Use criteria. An Assessor's site visit report will be distinct from their formal BREEAM In-Use assessment, serving as a form of evidence of compliance in its own right, and it may include photographs taken by the Assessor as part of the survey.
E4	Building (Energy) Management Systems (B(E)MS)/Metering data	Evidence on consumption of metered utilities, such as gas, electricity and water. This data can either be from individual sub-meters or collected through B(E)MS that is installed in the asset.
E5	Building Information Model (BIM)	The BIM (or BIM files) used for the project containing relevant information/evidence of compliance.
E6	Calculations	Evidence provided in a calculation format that supports that set targets/thresholds are met within the asset.
E7	Certificates of compliance (third party)	Examples include ISO 14001, FSC (Forest Stewardship Council), EPC (environmental profile certificate), EPD (environmental product declaration) etc.
E8	Communication records	Formal communication records between/from relevant stakeholders and/or other third parties confirming an appointment, action or outcome. This may be in the form of a letter, meeting minutes, email correspondence, publication or another form of media.
E9	Contractual information	Documents/contracts outlining how certain maintenance/monitoring/testing or other service is carried out by a (third) party.

Ref	Document/evidence type	Description/note
E10	Other third-party information	For example, maps, public transport timetables, product data/details, manufacturers' literature, local standards or codes, product labeling.
E11	Photographic evidence	Evidence provided in photographic/photocopy format (either hardcopy or digitally) that supports that building services/elements or other relevant infrastructure or product is in place/installed at the asset.
E12	Professional services contract	An agreement to provide professional or consulting services such as: maintenance, testing, or legal or technical advice.
E13	Risk assessment	The risk assessment considers the various operational risks and other risks on a project and how each risk will be managed and the party responsible for managing each risk.
E14	Specialist reports	Professional reports resulting from specialist surveys/studies/test results including (but not limited to): • Environmental Management Systems/Plans • flood risk assessment • acoustics • indoor air quality • transportation analysis • commissioning and maintenance reports and strategies • landscape and habitat management plan • Legionella management plan, etc. These surveys/studies/test results are often carried out by suitably qualified persons/organizations.
E15	Staff interviews	Interviews with staff members that support that specified (management) are being carried out in the asset. Staff interviews are an important part of the verification that formal processes/procedures/documents are made available to staff/building users.

Issue and credit structure

A BREEAM In-Use assessment is conducted by answering asset, operational and/or occupier specific questions within the Part for which the assessment is undertaken. Each Part has been divided into the relevant categories that are applicable to it containing issues that relate to the specific requirements.

Each BREEAM issue is structured as follows:

1. **Issue information**: This is in the title of the issue and contains the assessment issue reference, name, number of credits available and whether the issue forms part of BREEAM In-Use's minimum standards.
2. **Question**: This contains the question(s) that is asked to assess the BREEAM In-Use assessment issue.
3. **Aim**: This outlines the broad objective of the issue and the impact it measures/mitigates.
4. **Available credits**: This outlines the answer options to the question and the credits that are available for each of the answer options.
5. **Assessment criteria**: This section outlines the requirements that must be met in order for credits to be awarded. The information outlined in this section can include tables of benchmarks or asset type specific performance criteria.
6. **Evidence**: This section describes the type(s) of information that must be provided by the client and given to the BREEAM In-Use Assessor to enable verification of the asset's performance against the assessment criteria as required for certification. The evidence justifies the awarding of the relevant number of BREEAM In-Use credits. The BREEAM In-Use evidence requirements section provides further guidance on general evidence requirements but wherever possible, evidence should not be produced specifically for the purposes of the BREEAM assessment.
7. **Additional information**: This section contains any further information relevant to the application of the assessment criteria, including any definition of terms used in the assessment issue or sources of additional information that may be of use in addressing the issue.

Using the technical manual to complete an assessment

Assessments are carried out using the BREEAM In-Use online tool that contains all questions relating to the Parts and categories. These questions are the same as those listed in the technical manual under **Question** (2). This document is intended to assist clients and Assessors in understanding and interpreting the questions, their background and how they affect the assessment results.

The client and/or Assessor will answer the questions with the answer option that reflects the current situation within the asset that is being assessed. The answer options and the available credits are listed in the technical manual under **Available credits** (4). In order to assist the client and Assessor to select the appropriate answer options, the aim of the credit, listed under **Aim** (3), and the **Assessment criteria** (5) can be used. These sections list the criteria that must be met in order to award a certain number of available credits.

The **Evidence** (6) section outlines what types of specific evidence relating to the question could be supplied in addition to the general evidence requirements as outlined under **Evidence requirements for BREEAM USA In-Use.** Any additional information in which relevant definitions or other information is outlined can be found under **Additional information** (7).

The layout of the technical manual reflects the way in which information is entered within the BREEAM In-Use online tool. Each Part has its own specific section in which all the relevant information is outlined. In line with the BREEAM In-Use online tool, the manual outlines what building/asset specific related information must be completed prior to starting the BREEAM In-Use assessment. These can be found under the **Building Details** section.

The following sections of this manual set out the specific questions and requirements as described above and is organized into the three Parts, each containing the issues and questions relating specifically to that Part. This is followed by an Annex setting out details for Part 3 assessments of Office buildings only.

Building Details

Asset

The following details are entered when an asset is created.

Note: Questions marked * are mandatory.

Basic Asset Details

- **Asset Manager*** – Select the Asset Manager. In the BREEAM In-Use online tool, the Asset Manager is a profile option for users who have been authorized by the Portfolio Owner to have read/write access to assigned Performance Measurements.
- **Name of Asset*** – Enter the name of the asset.

  The name of the asset entered here will appear above the assets address on any certificates produced for this asset. Certificate shows a maximum of 28 characters.
- **Asset Description** – Enter a short description of the asset.

  Asset Description cannot be more than 500 characters
- **Year Built*** – Select the year in which the asset was constructed
- **In which year was the recent major refurbishment** – Select the year of the most recent major refurbishment.

Full Asset Address

- **Address Line1*** – First line of address for the asset (if the asset only comprises of part of a building, additional details relating to the entire building should also be entered).
- **Address Line2** – Second line of address for the asset

  Address line 1 and Address line 2 will be combined as a single line on the certificate and a maximum of 28 characters will be shown
- **Address Line3** – Third line of address for the asset
- **Address Line4** – Fourth line of address for the asset

  Address line 3 and Address line 4 will be combined as a single line on the certificate and a maximum of 28 characters will be shown
- **Town/City*** – Address Town or City
- **Country*** – Select Country
- **State*** – Select State
- **ZIP code*** – Five-digit zip code

Basic Building Details

Basic building details should be completed when an asset is registered to measure its performance. This section is divided into three: Ownership/Occupancy Details, Asset Dimensions, and Asset Type.

Note: Questions marked * are mandatory.

Ownership/Occupancy Details

Asset Ownership/Occupier

Asset Ownership/Occupier contains questions about the asset owner and its occupier(s). Filling out this data will assist in determining who carries the responsibility for carrying out or implementing the requirements as outlined in the criteria.

- **Name of the organization or person that owns the asset*** – Enter the name of the person or organization that owns the asset.
- **Name of the organization that manages the tenancy of the asset*** – Enter the name of the organization that manages the tenancy of the asset.
- **Name of the organization or person that occupies/leases the asset*** – Enter the name of the organization or person that occupies/leases the asset. If there are multiple tenants, you may enter "Multi-tenanted" or another variant.
- **Name of the organization leading the BREEAM In-Use assessment*** – Enter the name of the organization leading the BREEAM In-Use assessment.

Occupancy

Occupancy contains questions about the number of Full Time Occupiers and operating hours. Filling out this data will assist in determining whether requirements relating to services or fixtures that have been provided to occupants have been met.

- **Number of occupants** – Enter the number of Full Time Occupants.

  To calculate the number of full-time occupiers:

  Divide the total hours worked by contracted building occupants during the reporting period by the total number of contracted building occupants.

  Then divide the answer by the typical number of hours within the period, assuming that a typical working day is 8 hours and the typical number of working days in a full reporting year is 250.
- **Annual operational days** – Enter the total number of days per year that the asset is operating.
- **Daily operational hours** – Enter the total number of hours per day that the asset is operating.

Asset Dimensions

Asset Dimensions

- **Planning restrictions*** – Select any planning restrictions that might be in place.
- **Width (external) (ft)** – Enter the building width in ft. This is only the width of external façade.
- **Length (external) (ft)** – Enter the building length in ft. This is only the length of external façade.
- **Height (floor-to-floor height) (ft)** – Enter the floor to floor height in ft.
- **Basic asset shape (aerial view of asset)** – Select the shape that best represents the plan of your building (if the shape varies please choose the shape that represents the majority of the building).
- **Number of floors above ground** – Enter the number of floors above ground in your building.
- **Number of floors below ground** – Enter the number of floors below ground in your building.

The following questions relating to the floor area of the asset **only refer to the area of the asset that will be assessed**. Please refer to Eligibility criteria for further details.

- **Gross Internal Area (ft^2)*** – Enter the Gross Internal Area of the area of the asset to be assessed in ft^2.

  The Gross Internal Area is the area of an asset measured to the internal face of the perimeter walls at each floor level.

  Gross Leasable Area of an asset is the floor space contained within a tenancy at each floor level measured from the inside of main faces of external walls and, where applicable, the inside faces of internal inter-tenancy, partition and common area walls.

  In a single occupier asset, the Gross Internal Area should equal the Gross Leasable Area. In a multi-tenanted asset, the Gross Internal Area is the sum of Gross Leasable Area and Non-Leasable Area.

  Furthermore, for the purposes of BREEAM In-Use:

  a) If an assessment is only carried out for the common areas, the Gross Internal Area equals Non-Leasable Area.

  b) If an assessment is carried out for a multi-tenanted asset's common areas AND tenanted areas that are managed by the asset's facility/building manager, the Gross Internal Area should equal the sum of Non-Leasable Area and Gross Leasable Area of the tenanted areas.

  The Assessor **must** ensure that **all** consumption data that is filled out in the BREEAM In-Use online tool relates to the area filled in.

  If the asset comprises multiple types, the Gross Internal Area must be equal to the sum of the floor area of all asset types.

- **Non-Leasable Area (ft^2)** – Enter the building's Non-Leasable Are in ft^2.

Non-Leasable Areas or common areas are understood to be floor space area within a building from which no income can be derived. Examples include common use areas, elevator lobbies, stairwells, plant and technical rooms, management offices or rooms, non-exclusive public spaces and thoroughfares.

Within BREEAM In-Use, it has been agreed that parking areas, whether enclosed, multi-story or surface facilities, will be **excluded** from Non-Leasable Areas.

- **Gross Leasable Area (ft^2)** – Enter the building's Gross Leasable Area in ft^2.

  Within BREEAM In-Use, it has been agreed that parking areas, whether enclosed, multi-story or surface facilities, will be **excluded** from Gross Leasable Areas.

- **Area covered by hard landscaping (ft^2)** – Enter the area covered by hard landscaping in ft^2.
- **Area covered by soft landscaping (ft^2)** – Enter the area covered by soft landscaping in ft^2.

Additional information

These fields can be used to enter any additional information related to the asset dimensions that could assist the client and/or Assessor in completing the assessment.

BREEAM® USA

Asset Type

Asset Type contains questions relating to the space type(s) within the asset.

Note: Questions marked * are mandatory, as the inputs are used to generate the energy scores. If the asset comprises multiple types, the Gross Internal Floor Area filled in under Asset Dimensions must be equal to the sum of all asset types. The full list of Asset Types and Subtypes are available to the Assessors through the BREEAM Knowledge Base.

- **Asset Type 1*** – Select the main asset type.
- **Asset Subtype 1*** – Select the main asset subtype.
- **Gross Internal Area (ft^2)*** – Enter the main asset type Gross Internal Area.
- **Asset Type 2** – Select the second asset type.
- **Asset Subtype 2** – Select the second asset subtype.
- **Gross Internal Area (ft^2)** – Enter the second asset type Gross Internal Area.
- **Asset Type 3** – Select the third asset type.
- **Asset Subtype 3** – Select the third asset subtype.
- **Gross Internal Area (ft^2)** – Enter the third asset type Gross Internal Area.
- **Asset Type 4** – Select the fourth asset type.
- **Asset Subtype 4** – Select the fourth asset subtype.
- **Gross Internal Area (ft^2)** – Enter the fourth asset type Gross Internal Area.
- **Asset Type 5** – Select the fifth asset type.
- **Asset Subtype 5** – Select the fifth asset subtype.
- **Gross Internal Area (ft^2)** – Enter the fifth asset type Gross Internal Area.

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Part 1: Asset Performance

The performance of the asset's built form, construction, fixtures, fittings and installed services

Issue reference	Categories	Credits available
MAN	Management	-
HEA	Health & Wellbeing	33
ENE	Energy	108
TRA	Transport	18
WAT	Water	40
MAT	Materials	26
WST	Waste	4
LE	Land Use & Ecology	6
POL	Pollution	22
Total credits available		**257**

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Management

The Management category is not assessed within Part 1 of the BREEAM USA In-Use assessment.

Health and Wellbeing

Category summary table

Issue Reference	Title	Credits available
HEA 01	Glazing	2
HEA 02	Glare control	4
HEA 03	Thermal control	4
HEA 04	Ventilation controls	2
HEA 05	Microbial contamination	2
HEA 06	Drinking water provisions	2
HEA 07	Indoor and/or outdoor space	4
HEA 08	Illuminance levels (Lux)	4
HEA 09	Lighting control	4
HEA 10	Inclusive design	3
HEA 11	Ventilation requirements	2
Total credits available		**33**

Asset Performance HEA 01 – Glazing

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

What percentage of the building envelope is glazed?

Aim

To ensure building users have access to sufficient daylight, via windows and skylights.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	<1%
1	>1 to ≤10%
2	>10%

Assessment criteria

1. Glazed areas include skylights that let daylight pass directly into the building.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of all sides of building envelope.
2. Building elevations specifying height and width of building and all windows and skylights.
3. Calculation specifying the total glazed area as a percentage of the building envelope.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Building envelope: the physical separator between the interior (often conditioned) of the building and the outdoor environment. It includes the walls, roof and foundation. For the purposes of this BREEAM USA In-Use issue, only the walls and roof portions of the building envelope need to be taken into account.

Asset Performance HEA 02 – Glare control

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What glare control features have been fitted or installed in the building?

Aim

To reduce problems associated with glare in internal occupied areas.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
1	Glare control feature on all south facing windows, with control by the occupant
2	Glare control feature on all south facing windows, with automatic control
2	Glare control feature on all: south, east and west facing windows with control by the occupant
3	Glare control feature on all: south, east and west facing windows with automatic control
3	All windows have manually controlled solar shading
4	All windows have automatically controlled solar shading
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Glare control should be provided for relevant building areas where lighting and glare could be problematic for building users, e.g. workstations, projector screens and sports halls.
2. Curtains do not meet the criteria for the glare control requirement, as the control/design needs to allow a degree of flexibility to still allow sunlight in. The use of curtains to control glare would cause occupants to rely on artificial lighting to a greater extent.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of glare control features.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Glare control features may include (but are not limited to):

a. External sun control and shading device(s): sun-shading system for building solar control and protection from excessive solar light and heat.

b. Low eaves.

c. Bioclimatic design to provide shading from high-level summer and low-level winter sun. Bioclimatic design refers to the design of buildings and spaces (interior, exterior, outdoor) based on local climate, aimed at providing thermal and visual comfort, making use of solar energy and other environmental sources.

d. Internal blinds.

e. Tinted/opaque windows.

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance HEA 03 – Thermal control

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Do occupants of the asset have personal control over the temperature in their work area?

Aim

To recognize the provision of asset temperature controls that allow for independent adjustment of heating/cooling systems.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Yes, can open windows
2	Yes, can adjust temperature (using thermostat or thermostatic radiator valve)
2	Yes, can adjust airspeed
4	Yes, can adjust more than one of the above
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Local occupant control is available for temperature adjustment in separate zones.
2. Zoning refers to adequate sections of the building. For example, zoning should consider the different requirements for the central core of a building compared with the external perimeter adjacent to the windows.

Building specific Assessment Criteria

Retail

1. Temperature control within retail centers is required at shop unit level. Temperature control within common areas must still be adjustable at the building management level.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of controls.
2. Building plans illustrating zoned areas.

3. Short description of the zoning strategy that has been provided by the facilities management or building management team.
4. Temperature control plans.

Additional information

-

Asset Performance HEA 04 – Ventilation controls

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is there provision for personal control of ventilation for building occupants by enabling them to open windows or modify rates of air supply?

Aim

To recognize the provision of controls allowing ventilation comfort level optimization by building occupants.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Ideally sufficient provision requires ventilation rates (via windows or mechanical ventilation) to be adjustable within defined zones.
2. Zones should adequately reflect the sections of the building. For example, zoning should consider the different requirements for the central core of a building compared with the external perimeter adjacent to the windows.

Evidence

1. For naturally ventilated areas:
    a. Photographic evidence of window location and opening mechanisms.
2. For mechanically ventilated areas:
    a. Formal organizational documentation, such as operation and maintenance manual confirming the scope of thermal zoning and the method of control.

Additional information

Provision of electric desktop fans does not count as a means of ventilation.

Asset Performance HEA 05 – Minimizing Legionella contamination risk

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Has a risk assessment been carried out to identify the most effective system to minimize the risk of Legionella contamination?

Aim

To ensure the most effective and properly designed control systems are installed and to avoid risk of Legionellosis.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. The risk assessment that will determine the most effective system to minimize the risk of Legionellosis must be carried out by a suitable, qualified professional. The study would also indicate where Legionella control systems are not deemed necessary.
2. Any water system that is at risk of Legionella contamination should have the appropriate Legionella control systems installed. Water systems that are at risk of such contamination include (but are not limited to):
    a. Cooling towers
    b. Evaporative condenser
    c. Domestic hot and cold water systems
    d. Other plant and systems containing water which is likely to exceed 60°F (20°C) and which may release a spray or aerosol during operation or when being maintained. Examples include, but are not limited to:
        i. Humidifiers and air washers
        ii. Spa baths and pools
        iii. Car/bus washing points
        iv. Wet scrubbers
        v. Indoor fountains and water features

Evidence

1. Copy of the study that identifies the most effective method to avoid the risk of Legionellosis. The conclusion of this risk assessment must outline what system should be installed. Where no such systems are deemed necessary, this must be outlined in the study.
2. Where Legionella control systems have been installed, a copy of the operational manual/manufacturer specification indicating the type of Legionella control should be provided.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Legionellosis (Legionnaires' disease): A type of pneumonia caused by the bacterium Legionella pneumophilia. People catch Legionnaires' disease by inhaling small droplets of water suspended in the air, which contain the bacteria.

Suitably qualified professional: a person with sufficient knowledge, training and experience of the building water system design and water management as it relates to legionellosis to be able to describe the water systems, evaluate where hazardous conditions may occur, determine where control measures can and must be applied and maintained to stay within established control limits and establish procedures to monitor whether control measures are operating within established limits and if not, take corrective action.

Other information

Several methods to minimize the risk of Legionellosis currently exist. These include, but are not limited to:

a) Risk management through a thermal process (temperature control)

b) Risk management through a chemical process (e.g. chlorination, ozone, copper and silver ionization)

c) Risk management through a non-chemical process (e.g. U.V. irradiation, ultrasound)

Asset Performance HEA 06 – Drinking water provisions

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is drinking water provided for occupants?

Aim

To ensure the provision of fresh drinking water for building occupants.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Yes, point of use not connected to utility supply
2	Yes, point of use connected to utility supply

Assessment criteria

1. Drinking water access points need to be:
    a. Appropriate in number and placement to serve all building users; as determined by the Assessor's best judgment.
    b. In a hygienic location and condition.
    c. Freely available and accessible.

    Note: faucets in kitchen areas are compliant.
2. The following types of water dispensers do not comply with the criteria of this issue:
    a. Faucets in restroom areas.
3. The provision of drinking water applies to building occupants that are members of staff. This means that visitors to the asset are not included.

Building specific Assessment Criteria

Retail

1. For a retail center, adequate provision of drinking water should be provided for (but not limited to):
    a. all tenants and their members of staff
    b. building management personnel

c. security staff

d. cleaners

e. (where applicable) all office workers (or other members of staff related to the space use) in the building

Evidence

1. Photograph of water access points.
2. Building plans with access points identified.

Additional information

-

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance HEA 07 – Indoor and/or outdoor space

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are indoor rest and/or outdoor spaces provided for building occupants?

Aim

To recognize the provision of space that is to be used for breaks from the working environment.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Lounge/Dining areas
2	Dedicated outdoor space with seating sheltered from wind and/or rain (located at least 33 feet away from roads, parking lots or other sources of pollution)
2	Break rooms/areas with seating
2	Cafeteria facilities
4	Combination of 2 or more of the above
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Resting space should:
    a. Be of an adequate size. Adequate size is based on providing seating space for over 10% of building occupiers.
    b. Be accessible via safe pedestrian routes.
    c. Provide building users with an area that is private and not susceptible to disturbance from sources of noise such as building services, parking lots, delivery areas etc.
2. Resting space does not necessarily have to be provided within the asset, however: building users must have free and unrestricted access during working hours.

Building specific Assessment Criteria

Retail

1. Shopping centers should base their occupancy figures on average customer foot traffic.
2. Common rest areas may include (but are not limited to):
    a. Benches placed within the asset
    b. Food outlets with seating provision within the asset
3. Indoor and/or outdoor spaces refer to common areas shared with customers/visitors)
4. Food courts and restaurants count towards seating space provision.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence, demonstrating provisions available to building users.
2. Building plans illustrating seating areas within asset.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Lounge/dining areas: areas that are accessible to all building users, where they can have a break from the working environment. These areas contain comfortable seating and tables and are designed for longer breaks. Hot food and drinks could be provided for users.

Break rooms/areas: areas that are accessible to all staff. These areas are designed for short breaks. Hot drinks, such as tea and coffee, are available. Provisions to prepare food could be provided for users.

Cafeteria facilities: areas that are accessible to all staff. These areas are designed for longer breaks and contain comfortable seating and table. Hot food and drinks or provisions to prepare these are provided for staff. Other building users, such as visitors to the asset, could have access to these areas.

Asset Performance HEA 08 – Illuminance levels (Lux)

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Do internal and external lighting levels meet national guidance best practice levels?

Aim

To ensure optimum visual comfort for building occupants.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes, illuminance levels meet national guidance best practice levels

Assessment criteria

1. Lighting levels should be measured in relevant building areas by a suitably qualified person or organization.
2. A suitably qualified person or organization is a person/organization that has experience in undertaking lighting measurements. They must use the appropriately tested and calibrated equipment (lux meter) to undertake the lighting assessment.
3. Credits may not be awarded if light fittings need to be removed or lights covered.
4. National best practice lighting guides: The Lighting Handbook, 10th edition. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America (2011).

Evidence

2. Third party documentation or organizational documentation confirming the lighting levels in relevant building areas.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Relevant building area: occupied space is a room or space within the assessed building that is likely to be occupied for 30 minutes or more by a building user. The following internal areas are excluded from the requirements:

1. Media and arts production spaces.
2. Sports facilities (exercise spaces only, including hydrotherapy and physical therapy areas).

Asset Performance HEA 09 – Lighting control

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

To what extent do occupants have control over the lighting in their work area?

Aim

To optimize the level of occupant control over lighting in relevant building areas.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	None
2	Automatic lighting controls per zone with manual override
4	Automatic lighting controls per zone with manual override with provision of task lighting where requested
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Common control systems that would satisfy this credit include:
    a. Daylight sensors that switch lights off when daylight levels are high with manual over-ride facilities for building occupants
    b. Infra-red or movement detectors that switch lighting on/off in zones with manual over-ride facilities for building occupants
2. Zoning refers to adequate sections of the building. For example, zoning should consider the different requirements for the central core of a building compared with the external perimeter adjacent to the windows. Zoning of lighting controls is to be as follows:
    a. In office areas, zones of no more than four workplaces
    b. Workstations adjacent to windows/atria and other building areas separately zoned and controlled
    c. Seminar and lecture rooms: zoned for presentation and audience areas
    d. Library spaces: separate zoning of stacks, reading and counter areas
    e. Teaching space/demonstration area
    f. Whiteboard/display screen

g. Auditoria: zoning of seating areas, circulation space and lectern area

h. Dining, restaurant, café areas: separate zoning of serving areas and seating/dining areas

i. Retail: separate zoning of display and counter areas

j. Bar areas: separate zoning of bar and seating areas

3. The following internal areas are excluded from the lighting zone requirements:

    a. Media and arts production spaces.

    b. Sports facilities (exercise spaces only, including hydrotherapy and physical therapy areas).

Evidence

1. Where automatic/management systems have been installed, this should include how building occupants can over-ride it. This could include (but is not limited to):

    a. installation diagrams

    b. copy of building user guide outlining lighting controls

    c. Photographic evidence of lighting controls

2. Manufacturer information.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Relevant building area: occupied space which is a room or space within the assessed building that is likely to be occupied for 30 minutes or more by a building user.

Other information

There are many types of lighting control systems, but the main focus of this credit is the level of control that occupants have over the lighting of the space or room. As this credit is aimed at health and well-being and not energy consumption, it is important that the occupant has the ability to manually override the lighting controls per zone to suit his/her needs.

Asset Performance HEA 10 – Inclusive design

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

Question

Does the asset contain features, beyond those specified by applicable regulations and codes, which enable full use by individuals with disabilities?

Aim

To recognize and encourage assets that are functional and inclusive for all its users.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
3	Yes
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Features contained in the asset that enable full use by people with temporary or permanent disabilities must be in addition to local codes or requirements for accessibility. Features that have been provided for should include (but are not limited to) the following as guidance:
    a. The approach to all entrances should be level or gently sloping, with access for wheelchair users
    b. Entrances should be illuminated
    c. There should be space for turning a wheelchair in hallways and work areas, and adequate circulation space for wheelchairs elsewhere
    d. Designated restrooms should be easily accessible, correctly signposted and provision based on the number of and location of users
    e. Hand rails should be provided for ease of maneuverability
    f. Where applicable, elevators should be provided to allow individuals with disabilities access to all levels
    g. Evacuation procedures should take into account needs of people with disabilities. For example: providing evacuation chairs, specific features for individuals who are blind/have low vision and individuals who are deaf or hard of hearing.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of listed features
2. Building plans outlining installed features
3. Specifications of installed features

Additional information

-

Asset Performance HEA 11 – Ventilation requirements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Does the asset meet the requirements for either natural ventilation or mechanical ventilation as outlined in the Assessment criteria?

Aim

To ensure that ventilation systems within the asset do not circulate air that has the potential to be contaminated with exterior sources of pollution AND that re-circulation within the asset is minimized.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

For natural ventilation

Operable windows/ventilators within the building are located at least 33 feet from roads, parking lots and other potential sources of pollution, and all exhausts are at least 33 feet from any opening to minimize re-circulation within the building.

For mechanical and mixed-mode ventilation

Air intakes and exhausts are over 33 feet apart to minimize recirculation and intakes are over 66 feet from sources of external pollution. These include, but are not limited to:

1. Highways and the main access roads.
2. Parking lots and delivery/vehicle waiting bays.
3. Other building exhausts, including from building services plant, industrial/agricultural processes and smoking rooms/areas.

Evidence

1. In the case of natural ventilation:
    a. Photographic evidence or a copy of site plan which clearly indicates that the building location complies with the conditions specified, such as scaled drawings or on-site measurements.

2. In the case of mechanical ventilation:

    a. Photographic evidence or a copy of site plan which identifies the location of intake points and clearly indicates that they comply with the conditions specified, such as scaled drawings or on-site measurements.

Additional information

Other information

The distance requirement for air intakes and exhausts does not necessarily mean the plan distance, but the three-dimensional distance around and over objects; e.g. on plan the air intakes may be less than 66 feet from a source of external pollution, but the intake may be on the roof of a 10-story building and therefore over 66 feet from the source of pollution.

BREEAM® USA

Energy

Category summary table

Issue Reference	Title	Credits available
ENE 01	Heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC)	Up to 100 credits are available. Credits are calculated within the Energy Model
ENE 02	Ventilation strategy	
ENE 03	Heat loss	
ENE 04	Building pressure/air leakage test	
ENE 05	Heating	
ENE 06	Boiler efficiency	
ENE 07	Heat pump efficiency	
ENE 08	Fuel usage for heat generation	
ENE 09	Heat distribution	
ENE 10	Heat emitter type	
ENE 11	Mechanical and electrical heating equipment	
ENE 12	Cooling system	
ENE 13	Efficiency of cooling system	
ENE 14	Cooling distribution	
ENE 15	Heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) efficiency	
ENE 16	Refrigerant cooling system	
ENE 17	Cooling emitter type	
ENE 18	Glazing	
ENE 19	Mechanical and electrical cooling equipment	
ENE 20	Specific fan power	
ENE 21	Duct and air leakage tests	
ENE 22	Mechanical and electrical ventilation equipment	
ENE 23	Water heating	
ENE 24	Water heating energy sources	
ENE 25	High frequency ballast	
ENE 26	Internal lighting types	

Issue Reference	Title	Credits available
ENE 27	Automatic lighting controls	
ENE 28	Occupancy sensors	
ENE 29	Benchmarking	3
ENE 30	On-site renewables	5
Total credits available		**108**

BREEAM® USA

Asset Energy Calculator Guidance

Introduction

This section has been produced to give BREEAM USA In-Use Assessors further guidance on the workings of the asset energy calculator so it is clear how any improvements to the asset performance can be reflected in the calculation of the asset energy rating.

Overview

The first step to generating the BREEAM USA In-Use asset energy score is to assess the performance of specific energy end use components, listed in Table 10.

In order to assess the performance of the end use component, specific parameters (subcomponents) that have the greatest impact on the end use component score have been identified. The subcomponents contributing to the end use component score are listed in Table 10.

Table 10: Energy end use components and subcomponents

End use component	Subcomponent
Heating	Building Envelope – Thermal Conductance Building Envelope – Air Leakage Rate Ventilation Heat Recovery Efficiency of Heat Generation
Cooling	Solar Gains Building Envelope – Air Leakage Rate Efficiency of Cooling Generation
Heating Distribution	Efficiency of Heating Distribution
Cooling Distribution	Efficiency of Cooling Distribution
Lighting	Efficiency of Lighting Installation
Ventilation	Fan Efficiency Duct Leakage Air Handling Unit Leakage
Hot Water	Efficiency of Heat Generation

End Use components

The individual subcomponent scores are calculated by comparing actual performance to a benchmark best practice value. The actual performance is determined by answering the relevant questions in the energy category in Part 1.

The paragraphs below give a further explanation about the calculation of the subcomponent scores.

Heating

Four subcomponents contribute to the heating end use component score: envelope performance, building infiltration rate, efficiency of heat generation and ventilation heat recovery efficiency.

It is possible to make improvements to the heating end use component score by addressing each of these subcomponents and making improvements to:

1. The envelope performance: maximum score awarded for an external wall u-value of less than 0.030 Btu/hr ft^2 °F.
2. The building infiltration rate: maximum score awarded for infiltration of less than 2.5m^3/m^2 at 50Pa
3. The heat generator efficiency: maximum score awarded for efficiency equivalent to an electric heat pump with a EER of 23.88.
4. The ventilation heat recovery: maximum score awarded for ventilation heat recovery efficiency of 95%.

It should be noted that it is not possible to enter a value for ventilation heat recovery directly into the tool. Instead, the tool uses a default value based on the age of the heating system (where applicable).

Cooling

There are three subcomponents that contribute to the cooling end use component score: solar gain, building infiltration rate and efficiency of cooling generation.

It is possible to make improvements to the cooling end use component score by addressing each of these subcomponents and making improvements to:

1. Glazing area (as a proxy for solar gains): maximum score awarded for glazing area less than 25% of total façade area
2. The building infiltration rate: maximum score awarded for infiltration of less than 2.5m^3/m^2 at 50Pa
3. The cooling generator efficiency: maximum score awarded for efficiency equivalent to electric chiller with a EER of 23.88.

Heating distribution

The heating distribution end use component score is a function of the efficiency of the distribution system and the efficiency of the heat emitter.

Fixed efficiencies are assigned for the building in question in response to the user response to questions that ask for these system details.

The maximum score is achieved where there is no heat distribution i.e. 'local heating'.

Cooling distribution

The cooling distribution end use component score is a function of the efficiency of the distribution system and the efficiency of the cooling emitter.

Fixed efficiencies are assigned for the building in question in response to the user response to questions that ask for these system details.

The maximum score is achieved where there is no cooling distribution i.e. 'local cooling'.

Lighting

The lighting end use component score is a function of both the type of light fittings installed, and the lighting controls.

The lighting score can be improved by upgrading light fittings, or introducing automatic lighting controls where not already installed.

The most efficient lamp types are LED lighting (with special design lighting control system) and T5 fluorescents. The least efficient lamp types are tungsten halogen and incandescent lamps.

Where fluorescent lamps are installed, the score is improved when they are fitted with high frequency ballasts.

The maximum score is achieved where either LED lighting (with special control) or T5 lamps (with high frequency ballasts) are used with automatic controls covering 75% or more of the floor area not accessible to clients or customers.

Where more than one lamp type is installed, the score is calculated on an area weighted basis.

Ventilation

The ventilation end use component score is a function of three subcomponents: fan efficiency, duct leakage and air handling unit leakage.

The ventilation end use component score can be improved by:

1. Improving fan efficiency: maximum score awarded for a fan efficiency of 0.63 hp/kcfm or less.
2. Improving air leakage rates (and undertaking necessary testing to demonstrate compliance): maximum score awarded for Class A test results.

Hot water

The hot water end use component score is a function of the type of system and the fuel type used for water generation.

The maximum score is achieved for point of use generation using any fuel type other than electric.

Subcomponent and End use component scores

Once the individual subcomponent scores have been generated, they are multiplied by a weighting factor, which reflects the influence that the subcomponent has on the overall performance of the respective end use component. All weighted subcomponent scores are then summed to generate the main end use component score.

In order to generate the overall asset energy rating, it is necessary to take account of the influence that each energy end use component has on the total building energy consumption. Therefore, the end use components are weighted, reflecting the importance of the individual end use component in terms of its contribution to the overall energy consumption. The end use component weighting factors vary according to:

a) Building type, to reflect different energy end use patterns

b) Asset location, to reflect differences in climate and associated heating or cooling demand

The weighting factors would for example reflect the fact that a large proportion of the energy consumption in a retail building would typically be associated with lighting, or that an office in a hot climate would expect to use more energy for cooling than the same office in a colder climate.

The performance of each end use component is only assessed where that end use is present in the building that is being assessed. If a particular project does not have one or more of the end use components, the available asset energy score is distributed across the other end use components that are present. Table 11 illustrates how the end use component weighting factors for heating, lighting and hot water increase for a naturally ventilated office without cooling, compared to an air-conditioned office with mechanical ventilation.

Table 11: End use component weighting factors

Open Plan Office	End Use Component Weighting						
Servicing strategy	Heating	Heating Distribution	Cooling	Cooling Distribution	Lighting	Mechanical Ventilation	Hot Water
Cooling & Mechanical Ventilation	39.9	7.34	17.71	7.34	9.94	14.47	4.32
Naturally Ventilated	64.41	12.09	0	0	16.38	0	7.12

A further adjustment is then applied to the heating, heating distribution, cooling, and cooling distribution benchmarks to account for local climatic conditions.

Final score

The final score is calculated by adding together the weighted end use component scores.

Primary energy metric

It should be noted that the metric used to assess asset energy performance is primary energy, where 'primary energy' means energy from renewable and non-renewable sources which has not undergone any conversion or transformation process.

Asset energy calculator inputs

There are 2 levels of user input information that inform the calculation of the asset energy score.

Level 1: The user is required to enter information on the building type, age of the building, location (full address including ZIP code) and the maintenance strategy to generate a score. This information establishes the end use component weightings and the climate adjustment made to the end use weightings.

Level 2: The user can enter further information to describe the performance of various systems; user response to these questions is optional.

If the user is unable to answer any questions describing building performance, the tool will use default lookup values for the calculation. These values are based on either:

- The last time the relevant system was replaced, if known, or
- The age of the building

Figure 4 illustrates the above logic and calculation of the asset energy calculation score.

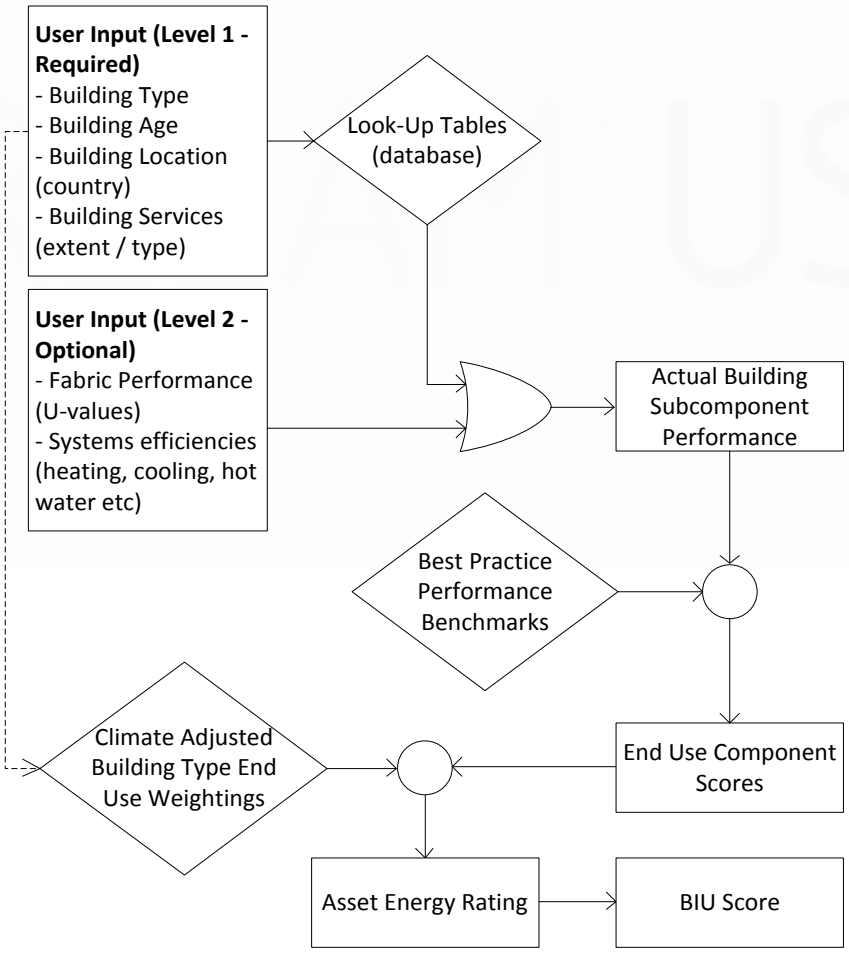


Figure 4: Asset energy calculation flowchart

Asset Performance ENE 01 – Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (HVAC)

Number of credits available	Minimum standards	Mandatory question
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No	Yes

Question

What building services are present in the asset?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
-	Question not answered
-	Heating only
-	Heating and cooling
-	Cooling only
-	None
-	Domestic hot water only
-	Heating and hot water
-	Heating and cooling and hot water
-	Cooling and hot water

Assessment criteria

1. Building services include any fixed cooling, hot water or heating systems that are installed within the asset. These systems can either service the whole asset or part thereof. Building services include (but are not limited to):
    a. Domestic hot water
    b. Point of use hot water systems
    c. Boilers
    d. Heat pumps
    e. Chillers
    f. Local heaters
    g. Local split air conditioning systems

h. Fully centralized air conditioning systems

2. Heating/cooling systems can be excluded from the calculation where the heated or cooled area equates to less than 10% of overall floor area.

Evidence

One of the following is acceptable:

1. Visual inspection and verification through photographic evidence of listed system(s).
2. Extract of Operational & Maintenance (O&M) manuals listing all building services that are present in the building.
3. Installation diagrams.

Additional information

Other information

This question must be answered in order to generate the asset energy rating (along with: building type, building age, building location, and building ventilation strategy).

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance ENE 02 – Ventilation strategy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards	Mandatory question
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No	Yes

Question

What is the ventilation strategy for the building (Natural or Mechanical)?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Natural ventilation
-	Mechanical ventilation
-	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Assessors need to confirm that the specified ventilation systems are in use.
2. For the purposes of this BREEAM USA In-Use issue:
    a. A mechanically ventilated building is a building with a centralized mechanical ventilation system, or mixed mode building. Typically, a mechanically ventilated building will provide both supply and exhaust.
    b. A naturally ventilated building is a building that is designed to be capable of providing fresh air entirely by natural ventilation strategy (with the exception of local mechanical exhaust systems).
3. If both ventilation systems are in use in the building, the selection must be mechanical unless this usage is negligible.

Evidence

1. Visual inspection and verification through photographic evidence of ventilation system.
2. Extract of O&M manual listing ventilation systems that are present in the building Installation diagrams.

Additional information

Other information

This question must be answered in order to generate the asset energy rating (along with: building type, building age, building location, and building services).

Asset Performance ENE 03 – Heat loss

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

Please provide the design U-Values of the external walls (Btu/hr ft^2 °F).

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated In Asset Energy Model
-	The design U-value of the walls (Btu/hr ft^2 °F)

Assessment criteria

1. U-Values of the building external walls can be determined through:
    a. A copy of design specifications indicating the design U-value of the assets walls
    b. Relevant building code or regulation providing an indication of U-value figure, at the time that the building was built
    c. Site investigation e.g. building surveyor with appropriate knowledge of prevalent construction methods; this could be the Assessor

Note: If the U-values differ between the external walls please enter the average U-value.

Note: U-values entered must be between 0.030 and 0.352 Btu/hr ft^2 °F. If the U-value is outside of the permitted values, please enter the upper or lower limit as appropriate.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of building wall construction (if possible).
2. Building design plans.
3. Written details of the relevant building regulations stating the minimum U-value at the time the asset was constructed.
4. Expert report by an architect, commissioning agent or equivalent estimating the U-value

Additional information

Relevant definitions

U-value: is a measure of heat loss in a building element such as a wall, floor or roof that measures the effectiveness of a material as an insulator. The U-value figure of the external walls is used to assess the overall envelope performance of the asset. A lower U-value indicates a higher level of thermal efficiency.

Asset Performance ENE 04 – Building pressure/air leakage test

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the result of the building pressure/air leakage test?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	≤2.5m^3/h/m^2@50Pa
-	>2.5 to ≤5m^3/h/m^2@50Pa
-	>5 to ≤10m^3/h/m^2@50Pa
-	>10 to ≤15m^3/h/m^2@50Pa
-	>15m^3/h/m^2@50Pa
-	Untested

Assessment criteria

1. Assessors should verify:
    a. The results of building pressure/air leakage tests
    b. That testing was conducted by relevant competent persons
2. The appropriate standard for air leakage testing is: ISO 9972:2006/EN 13829:2000 Thermal performance of buildings - Determination of air permeability of buildings - Fan pressurization method or ASTM E779-10 Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization.
3. Air leakage testing results must be from testing that has, at least, been carried out after construction of the building or when structural changes have been made to the building. The testing must have been carried out by a competent person whose expertise should be broad enough to cover all required technical aspects guaranteeing that the data collected during the test is appropriate and that the results reflect the actual airtightness performance of the building. It can be someone operating as sole proprietor or employed by public or private enterprises or agencies.

Evidence

1. Copy of results from building pressure and/or air leakage test.
2. Confirmation of competence levels for persons performing testing.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Air leakage test: a test that quantifies the air permeability rate of the building envelope. The more airtight the building envelope is the lower the air permeability result will be. To maximize energy efficiency, it is advised that the air permeability result is as low as reasonably practicable.

Relevant competent person: An individual achieving all of the following can be considered to be a relevant competent person:

a) Holds a recognized qualification in airtightness testing and measurement.

b) Has relevant experience in air pressure testing at least ten large non-residential buildings within the last five years.

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance ENE 05 – Heating

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the main generation type for space heating?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Boiler
-	Heat pump/reversible chiller
-	Direct electricity consumption
-	Other onsite heat generation, e.g. CHP/Solar thermal
-	Heat generated offsite e.g., district heating
-	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Where there is more than one heat source in the asset, the Assessor must clarify and verify that the selected generation type is the main heat source for the asset.
2. If there is more than one boiler the Assessor should base the efficiency figure on the average efficiency of the systems. This can be weighted based upon respective system capacities.
3. If there is more than one heat pump the Assessor should base the COP figure on the average COP of the systems. This can be weighted based upon respective system capacities.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of listed space heating system.
2. Extract of O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information of heating systems that are present in the asset.
3. Where there is more than one heat source installed, photographic evidence that the selected generation type is the main heat source.

Additional information

-

Asset Performance ENE 06 – Boiler efficiency

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

For boilers, other on-site, offsite, and other generation type heat sources please enter efficiency, if known.

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Boiler efficiency (%)

Assessment criteria

1. If there is more than one boiler the Assessor should base the efficiency figure on the average efficiency of the two systems. This can be weighted based upon respective system capacities.
2. The question need not be answered where any other heat generation type as listed in the question is in use in the asset.

Evidence

1. Extract of manufacturer literature stating the boiler efficiency
2. Photographic evidence of installed boiler.

Additional information

Other information

To assess a CHP unit using BREEAM USA In-Use, select the 'main generation type for space heating' as 'other on site e.g. CHP/solar thermal'. In order to account for the fact that the overall efficiency of the CHP system would not be recognized by entering the actual CHP thermal efficiency, the efficiency value to be entered should be calculated as follows:

$$Overall\ efficiency = thermal\ efficiency + (2 \times electrical\ efficiency)$$

As an example, if the thermal efficiency was 50%, and the electrical efficiency 35%, then the calculated efficiency would be:

$$50\% + (2 \times 35\%) = 120\%$$

Asset Performance ENE 07 – Heat pump efficiency

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

For **heat pump** generation type, please enter Energy Efficiency Ratio (EER), if known.

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Heat pump Energy Efficiency Ratio (EER)

Assessment criteria

1. If there is more than one heat pump the Assessor should base the EER figure on the average EER of the two systems. This can be weighted based upon respective system capacities.
2. The Energy Efficiency Ratio (EER) of a heat pump is calculated as the ratio of heating or cooling provided to electrical energy consumed. EER entered must not be higher than 23.88.

Evidence

1. Extract of O&M or copy of manufacturer information or other efficiency data from another valid source.
2. Visual inspection of installed heat pump(s) backed up by photographic evidence.

Additional information

-

Asset Performance ENE 08 – Fuel usage for heat generation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the main fuel used for heat generation?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Electric
-	Solid fossil fuel
-	Oil
-	Gas
-	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The main fuel used for heat generation is the fuel type for the main source of heat generation, regardless of whether the source of heat generation is on site or off site.
2. If a building is connected to a district heating system, then it is the main fuel type for the district heating system that should be entered.
3. If the main fuel used for heat generation is biomass/biofuel, select 'Other'.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of the listed heat generating equipment.
2. Extract of O&M manual or copy of manufacturer information for relevant equipment.

Additional information

-

Asset Performance ENE 09 – Heat distribution

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the predominant medium by which heat is distributed around the asset?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	By air
-	By water
-	By refrigerant
-	Other
-	Local heating – no heat distribution system

Assessment criteria

-

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of listed system, indicating distribution method.
2. Extract of O&M manual or copy of manufacturer information indicating medium for heat distribution.
3. Installation diagrams.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Distribution medium: For the purposes of this BREEAM USA In-Use issue, the distribution medium refers to the medium that is used to distribute the heat from the point at which it is generated, to the point at which it is required. Listed below are examples of typical media by which heat is distributed for specific heat distribution type:

a. For a conventional gas boiler/radiator/conventional HVAC system, the medium will be water.
b. For an air-conditioned building, the medium may be air if hot/cold air ducted throughout building, or it may be refrigerant if external condensers are connected to indoor units.
c. For heat pumps, the medium may be a refrigerant.

Asset Performance ENE 10 – Heat emitter type

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the main heat emitter type?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Asset is not heated
-	Radiators
-	Fan coil units
-	Ducted warm air
-	Direct radiant heating
-	Under floor heating
-	Other

Assessment criteria

-

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of the listed equipment.
2. Extract of O&M manual
3. Building schematics

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Main heat emitter type: For the purposes of this BREEAM USA In-Use issue, the main heat emitter type is the main type through which heat is emitted in to the space/area for which heating is required.

Description of listed heat emitter types:

a) Radiator is a device that warms a space by radiating heat by running a hot liquid through exposed elements (fins or pipes)

b) Fan coil unit is a device consisting of a heating coil and fan used to warm a space

c) Ducted warm air heating a space by providing hot air to it through ductwork

d) Direct radiant heating warms a space by emitting heat from a warm element, such as a floor, wall or overhead panel, warming people and other objects in the space rather than heating the air.

e) Under floor heating is a form of central heating in which spaces are heated through the floor (either by directly warming people and objects or by heating the air in the space)

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance ENE 11 – Mechanical and electrical heating equipment

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

In what year was the main heat generator/heating system installed/replaced (if known)?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	2006 +
-	2002 – 2005
-	1995 – 2001
-	1990 – 1994
-	1985 – 1989
-	1965 – 1984
-	1945 – 1964
-	1920 – 1945
-	Pre 1920

Assessment criteria

-

Evidence

1. Copy of documentation outlining when heat generator or heating system was installed or replaced, such as,
    a. Extract of O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information for heat generator/heating system
    b. Service and/or maintenance records
    c. Installation records
    d. Maintenance records
2. Photographic evidence of heating system(s) if possible).

Additional information

-

Asset Performance ENE 12 – Cooling system

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the main system type for cooling?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Asset is not cooled
-	Localized (room) air conditioning unit
-	Chiller
-	Desiccant cooling system
-	Evaporative cooling
-	Ground cooling (air)
-	Ground cooling (water)
-	Sea/river/lake water cooling
-	Other

Assessment criteria

-

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of relevant systems.
2. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Descriptions of typical cooling systems are as follows:

a) Localized (room) air conditioning unit: cooling is typically supplied stand-alone, all in one, (most commonly) wall-mounted unit. This does not include temporary/mobile units or small split systems (where the system type selected should be chiller).

b) Chiller: cooling is supplied via a system that uses a machine (chiller) that removes heat from a liquid via a vapor-compression or absorption refrigeration cycle. This liquid can then be circulated through a heat exchanger to cool air or equipment as required. These systems are typically (but not limited to):

    i. an outdoor unit serving a split system

    ii. a centralized chiller, typically roof mounted, or housed externally

c) Desiccant cooling system: desiccant cooling relies on the moisture absorption properties of hygroscopic materials.

d) Evaporative cooling: the evaporation of water is used to decrease the dry bulb temperature of air, Evaporative cooling can be direct (water evaporated directly into supply air stream), or indirect (secondary air stream is cooled directly and then exhausted).

e) Ground cooling (air): cooling is provided by drawing outdoor air into the building via an underground duct system where the air exchanges heat with the ground.

f) Ground cooling (water): cooling is provided by extracting ground water and passing through a heat exchanger before returning to the ground. Can be open loop or closed loop.

g) Sea/river/lake water cooling: cooling is provided by pumping water from an open body of water by an open loop system with cooling extracted via a heat exchanger.

Asset Performance ENE 13 – Efficiency of cooling generator

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

Please enter the Energy Efficiency Ratio (EER) of the cooling generator, if known.

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Energy efficiency ratio (EER) of generator

Assessment criteria

1. The EER of the cooling generator should not be larger than 23.88.

Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information or other efficiency data from another valid source.
2. If there is more than one cooling generator the Assessor should base the EER figure on the average EER of the two systems. This must be weighted based upon the capacity of the systems.

Additional information

Other information

To assess CCHP/absorption chillers using BREEAM USA In-Use, select the 'main system type for cooling' as 'Chiller'. The energy efficiency ratio (EER) for cooling generator should then be calculated as follows:

$$EER = rated\ absorption\ chiller\ COP \times 2$$

As an example, if the absorption chiller COP was 0.7, then the calculated energy efficiency ratio to be entered into the tool would be:

$$0.7 \times 2 = 1.4$$

Where the calculated EER is below the minimum value that can be entered into the tool, please enter the minimum value. This correction is made to cancel out the primary energy factor normally applied for electrical chillers that would not be applicable in this instance.

Please note: absorption chillers are unlikely to score highly under the current methodology due in part to the use of the primary energy metric. The score will however be balanced to some degree by an improved score against the heating end use component where CCHP is used.

Asset Performance ENE 14 – Cooling distribution

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the predominant medium by which cooling is distributed around the asset?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Local (room) cooling
-	By air
-	By water
-	By refrigerant
-	Other

Assessment criteria

-

Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
2. Photographic evidence of relevant systems.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Cooling distribution medium: For the purposes of this BREEAM USA In-Use issue, the distribution medium refers to the medium that is used to distribute the cooling capacity from the point at which it is generated, to the point at which it is required.

Descriptions of typical cooling systems and the cooling medium are as follows:

a. Chiller: by refrigerant

b. Desiccant cooling system: typically by air

c. Evaporative cooling: by air

d. Ground cooling: either by air or water

e. Sea/river/lake water cooling: typically by water

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance ENE 15 – Air distributed cooling system

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the system subtype for **air distributed** cooling systems?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Single duct constant volume
-	Single duct variable volume
-	Dual duct
-	Other

Assessment criteria

1. This question **only** refers to assets that have air distributed cooling systems installed.

Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
2. Photographic evidence of relevant systems.

Additional information

Descriptions of typical air distributed cooling systems are as follows:

a. Single duct constant volume systems maintain a constant air volume and vary the supply air temperature in response to space conditions.

b. Single duct variable volume systems control the temperature in a space by varying the quantity of air supplied, rather than the supply air temperature.

c. Dual duct systems use two separate ducts to circulate both cooled and heated air.

Asset Performance ENE 16 – Refrigerant cooling system

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the system subtype for **refrigerant** cooling systems?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Split system
-	Variable refrigerant flow (VRF) system
-	Other

Assessment criteria

-

Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
2. Photographic evidence of relevant systems.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Descriptions of refrigerant cooling subtypes are as follows:

a. Split system – This subtype utilizes one external condensing unit/heat pump, which connects, via refrigerant pipework, to the indoor unit. These systems can serve multiple rooms which have similar heating/cooling loads. In these systems only one indoor unit is utilized as a master temperature control sensor. Split systems work with a limited number of indoor units.

b. Variable refrigerant flow (VRF) system – This subtype again utilizes one external condensing unit/heat pump, which is connected to several indoor units. However, these systems allow versatility between heating /cooling loads and work independently of each other. VRF systems can work with many more units than split systems (e.g. up to 16 is fairly typical) and can provide simultaneous heating and cooling, and heat recovery.

Asset Performance ENE 17 – Cooling emitter type

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the main cooling emitter type?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Air ducts
-	Radiators
-	Fan coil units
-	Direct radiant cooling, e.g. passive chilled beams
-	Fan assisted cooling, e.g. active chilled beams
-	Induction units
-	Other

Assessment criteria

1. If more than one cooling emitter type is in use the selection must be that which distributes the most common cooling load within the building.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of installed cooling systems.
2. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
3. Installation diagrams.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Main emitter type: For the purposes of this BREEAM USA In-Use issue, the main emitter type is the main type through which cooling capacity is supplied in to the space/area for which cooling is required.

Descriptions of emitter types are listed below:

a. Air duct: a tube, canal, pipe, or similar through which coolant is delivered to a room.

b. Radiator: a temperature-controlled surface that cools indoor temperatures by removing heat.

c. Fan coil unit is a device consisting of a cooling coil and fan used to cool a space.

d. Direct radiant cooling (e.g. passive chilled beam): a space is cooled through a temperature-controlled surface that cools indoor temperatures by removing sensible heat. There is no mechanical component to force the air through the system.

e. Fan assisted cooling (e.g. active chilled beam): a space is cooled through the recirculation of cool air by a fan. This fan could be installed in combination with direct radiant cooling to increase its cooling capacity.

f. Induction units: a space is cooled by a process in which induced room air is cooled by a water coil to the extent needed to control the room temperature.

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance ENE 18 – Glazing

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What percentage of the external elevation is glazed?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Percentage of external elevation that is glazed (%)

Assessment criteria

-

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of building from all sides.
2. Building elevations

Additional information

-

Asset Performance ENE 19 – Mechanical and electrical cooling equipment

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

In what year was the main chiller/cooling system installed/replaced (if known)?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	2006 +
-	2002 – 2005
-	1995 – 2001
-	1990 – 1994
-	1985 – 1989
-	1965 – 1984
-	1945 – 1964
-	1920 – 1945
-	Pre 1920

Assessment criteria

-

Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information for chiller/cooling system.
2. Service/maintenance records for the chiller/cooling system.
3. Visual inspection of equipment date (photographic evidence if possible).

Additional information

-

Asset Performance ENE 20 – Specific fan power

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the specific fan power for air handling systems?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	3.16 hp/kcfm
-	1.90 hp/kcfm
-	0.63 hp/kcfm
-	Other

Assessment criteria

1. In this instance, air handling systems are systems (usually centralized) which distribute air (usually for cooling) around the building.

Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.

Additional information

Specific Fan Power is a measure of the efficiency of a fan. It is calculated by dividing the electrical power consumed by a fan (hp) by the airflow through that fan (ft^3/min). If multiple systems have been installed, it would be calculated by dividing the sum of the electrical power consumed by all fans by the airflow through these fans. -

Asset Performance ENE 21 – Duct and air handling leakage tests

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What are the results of duct and air handling leakage tests?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Not applicable
-	No test
-	Class A result
-	Class B result
-	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Class A and Class B results for duct and air handling leakage tests are:

   $Class\ A: f = 0.531 \cdot (\frac{p}{0.004})^{0.65}$

   $Class\ B: f = 0.177 \cdot (\frac{p}{0.004})^{0.65}$

   Where:

   f = air leakage in cfm/100 ft^2

   p = static pressure in wg (inch water gauge)

   As referenced in:

   Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association (SMACNA) *HVAC Air Duct Leakage Manual*, 2nd edition (2012).

Evidence

1. Copy of duct and air handling leakage test results.

Additional information

Other information

The maximum score is awarded for Class A systems i.e. those with the lowest air leakage rates.

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance ENE 22 – Mechanical and electrical ventilation equipment

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

In what year was the main ventilation system installed/replaced (if known)?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	2006 +
-	2002 – 2005
-	1995 – 2001
-	1990 – 1994
-	1985 – 1989
-	1965 – 1984
-	1945 – 1964
-	1920 – 1945
-	Pre 1920

Assessment criteria

-

Evidence

1. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information for ventilation system.
2. Service/maintenance records for the ventilation system.
3. Visual inspection of equipment date (photographic evidence if possible).

Additional information

-

Asset Performance ENE 23 – Domestic water heating

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What type of domestic hot water heating is provided?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Point of use
-	Centralized
-	Other

Assessment criteria

1. This question pertains to the predominant system that is used for domestic hot water generation within the asset and does not include systems that are used to heat spaces.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of water heating systems.
2. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
3. Installation diagrams.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Commonly used water heating types:

a. Point of use: hot water is directly provided from a faucet for drinking and cooking, i.e. via an instant hot water device.

b. Centralized: hot water for drinking and cooking is provided centrally, i.e. through a storage tank water heater or boiler.

Asset Performance ENE 24 – Domestic water heating energy sources

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What energy source is used to heat domestic water? If there is a mixture of centralized and point of use systems please select the energy source type of the centralized system.

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	Electric
-	Solid fossil fuel
-	Oil
-	Gas
-	Other

Assessment criteria

1. If there is a mixture of centralized and point of use systems, the energy source type of the centralized system should be selected.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of relevant system.
2. Extract of relevant O&M manuals or copy of manufacturer information.
3. Installation maps.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Some examples of water heating include (but are not limited to):

a. Point of use, likely to be electric

b. Boiler or water heater, likely to be gas or oil

Asset Performance ENE 25 – High frequency ballast

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What percentage of fluorescent lamps has high frequency ballasts?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	There are no fluorescent lamps
-	0 to <50%
-	≥50% to <75%
-	≥75% to <100%
-	100%
-	Other

Assessment criteria

-

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of ballasts used for fluorescent lamps.
2. Copy of relevant manufacturer literature (if necessary).
3. Copy of building plans highlighting areas which use fluorescent lamps with high frequency ballasts.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

High frequency ballast is a device that is designed to limit the current through the tube of a fluorescent lamp and to optimally operate a fluorescent lamp.

Asset Performance ENE 26 – Internal lighting types

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

Of all internal lamps, what percentage is of the type as listed below?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Percentage of Compact Fluorescent lighting (%)
-	Percentage of Tungsten Halogen lighting (%)
-	Percentage of Incandescent lamps lighting (%)
-	Percentage of T12 type lighting (%)
-	Percentage of T8 type lighting (%)
-	Percentage of T5 type lighting (%)
-	Percentage of LED type lighting (%) (with a special lighting control system)
-	Percentage of LED type lighting (%) (with a typical lighting control system)
-	Percentage of metal halide type lighting (%)

Assessment criteria

1. For LED type lighting with a special lighting control system:

   Special design lighting control systems allow the user to control all lighting within the asset from a central location. Other features include pre-set scene lighting levels for varying spaces, for example dimming levels etc. Special lighting systems include a variety of different control panels such as: integration to automated control systems and video controls. These lighting systems allow multiple zones to be created to allow for an improvement in energy efficiency.

2. For LED type lighting with a typical lighting control system:

   Typical lighting control systems utilize stand-alone control within the space, whereby adjustment occurs only at the lighting location. Examples could include occupancy sensors and daylight sensors etc. Typical lighting systems include an on/off switch and can include dimming settings.

3. Valid responses for each lamp type questions are in percentage (%) values and must equal 100%.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of lighting types used.
2. Copy of building plans highlighting areas which use the mentioned lighting types.

Additional information

-

BREEAM®USA

Asset Performance ENE 27 – Automatic lighting controls

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What percentage of the building floor area (not accessible to clients/customers) with access to daylight has fully functioning automatic controls with daylight sensors for lighting?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	0%
-	>0% to ≤25%
-	>25% to ≤50%
-	>50% to ≤75%
-	>75%

Assessment criteria

-

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of installed daylight sensors.
2. Copy of building plans highlighting areas that use daylight sensors for lighting.

Additional information

-

Asset Performance ENE 28 – Occupancy sensors

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What percentage of the building floor area (not accessible to client/customers) has fully functioning occupancy sensors for lighting?

Aim

This data is required to generate the asset energy rating.

Available Credits

Credits	Input calculated in Asset Energy Model
-	Question not answered
-	Don't know
-	0%
-	>0% to ≤25%
-	>25% to ≤50%
-	>50% to ≤75%
-	>75%

Assessment criteria

-

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of installed lighting sensors.
2. Copy of building plans highlighting areas which use occupancy sensors for lighting

Additional information

-

Asset Performance ENE 29 – Benchmarking

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

Question

Has the asset been assessed against a local or national energy performance standard?

Aim

To ascertain whether the organization has benchmarked their asset performance against a national energy performance standard.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
3	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Energy performance standards must be derived from relevant national policy framework. An example would be the U.S. Department of Energy's Building Energy Asset Score (Asset Score) is a national standardized tool for assessing the physical and structural energy efficiency of commercial and multifamily residential buildings.

Evidence

1. Copy of a certificate which illustrates that the asset has been certified against the relevant local/national energy performance standards.

Additional information

About the Building Energy Asset Score

The Building Energy Asset Score is a national standardized tool for assessing the physical and structural energy efficiency of commercial and multifamily residential buildings. The Asset Score generates an Asset Score Report that enables users to compare the physical energy efficiency of buildings, communicate building efficiency to the marketplace, and identify opportunities to invest in energy efficiency upgrades. More information and access to the online tool can be found at http://energy.gov/eere/buildings/building-energy-asset-score.

Other information

This question does not feed in to the energy model.

Asset Performance ENE 30 – On-site renewables

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
5	No

Question

What percentage of the total energy consumption is offset by on-site renewables and renewable micro grids?

Aim

To understand if renewable energy technologies are being used on site and how much these offset energy requirements for the site.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	There is no on-site or renewable micro grid energy generation
1	≥0<5%
2	≥5% to <10%
3	≥10% to <15%
4	≥15% to <20%
5	≥20%

Assessment criteria

1. Calculating energy offset should be done by the following formula (all figures for energy should be converted to kWh prior to calculation):

$$\frac{Er}{E} \times 100 = Eo$$

$E = Total\ energy\ used\ onsite\ per\ annum$
$Er = Energy\ produced\ from\ renewable\ techno\log ies\ on\ site\ per\ annum$
$Eo = Offset\ energy$

2. All renewable energy generation should be sub-metered. This metered data would then be used to calculate the proportion of renewable energy generated (in kWh).
3. Renewable energy produced on site needs to be used directly, fed into the grid and/or stored for later use.

4. For the purposes of BREEAM USA In-Use, energy from renewable sources means energy from renewable non-fossil fuel sources, namely wind, solar, heat pumps (aerothermal, geothermal, hydrothermal) and ocean energy, hydropower, biomass, landfill gas, sewage treatment plant gas and bio gases. Full definitions of these are found under the Additional Information section.

   The following requirements must also be met:

   a. There must be a Private wire arrangement directly supplying energy produced to the building under assessment.

   b. Where the state in which the asset being assessed is located has an independent state certification program for installers of small scale renewable energy or Combined Heat and Power systems, these technologies must be certified in accordance with the state scheme.

   c. The accreditation program must align with the relevant state directives or standards.

   d. Air source heat pumps can only be considered as a renewable technology when used in heating mode. Please contact BRE Global Limited for more information on accounting for energy from heat pumps.

      Where independent accreditation programs do not exist in the state, the Client must demonstrate they have investigated the competence of the installer selected to install the LZC technology. The Client must also demonstrate that they are confident the installers have the skill and competence to install the technology appropriately.

      Other systems may be acceptable as part of a LZC strategy under this issue but are not inherently considered as LZC technologies. Acceptability will be dependent on the nature of the system proposed and the carbon benefits achieved. The BREEAM Assessor must confirm acceptability with BRE Global Limited if in doubt.

5. Simply signing up to a renewable energy purchasing program is **NOT** considered to be an acceptable means of demonstrating compliance with the criteria.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of on-site renewable energy sources or community renewable energy programs
2. Yearly energy bills
3. Yearly metering data
4. Data sources created through amalgamation of energy bills or metering data (Excel Spread sheets for example)

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Aerothermal energy means energy stored in the form of heat in the ambient air;

Geothermal energy means energy stored in the form of heat beneath the surface of solid earth;

Hydrothermal energy means energy stored in the form of heat in surface water;

Biomass means the biodegradable fraction of products, waste and residues from biological origin from agriculture (including vegetal and animal substances), forestry and related industries including fisheries and aquaculture, as well as the biodegradable fraction of industrial and municipal waste;

Bioliquids means liquid fuel for energy purposes other than for transport, including electricity and heating and cooling, produced from biomass;

Biofuels means liquid or gaseous fuel for transport produced from biomass.

Other information

This question does not feed into the energy model.

Community energy projects have an emphasis on local engagement, local leadership and control and the local community benefiting collectively from the outcomes. Community-led action can often tackle challenging issues around energy, with community groups well placed to understand their local areas and to bring people together with common purpose.

Examples include (but are not limited to):

- Community-owned renewable electricity installations such as solar photovoltaic (PV) panels, wind turbines or hydroelectric generation.
- Members of the community jointly switching to a renewable heat source such as a heat pump or biomass boiler.

Transport

Category summary table

Issue Reference	Title	Credits available
TRA 01	Cyclist facilities	4
TRA 02	Proximity to public transport	8
TRA 03	Proximity to amenities	4
TRA 04	Pedestrian and cyclist safety	2
Total credits available		**18**

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance TRA 01 – Cyclist facilities

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What provisions are available to cyclists?

Aim

To encourage building users to cycle by ensuring adequate provision of cyclist facilities.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Well-lit secure cycle racks are in place
2	Well-lit secure cycle racks and gender-specific changing facilities or individual cubicles (including lockers) in place
3	Well-lit secure cycle racks, gender-specific changing facilities or individual cubicles, and shower facilities (including lockers) in place
4	Well-lit secure cycle racks, gender-specific changing facilities or individual cubicles, and shower facilities (including lockers), and a ventilated drying area to hang wet clothes in a sheltered space
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Compliant cycle storage facilities (see definition under Additional Information section) must be provided for a percentage of staff in accordance with the following figures:
    a. 10% of staff numbers for organizations for the first 500 staff PLUS
    b. 7% of staff numbers for organizations for the next 501 – 1000 staff PLUS
    c. 5% of staff numbers for organizations for the next 1000+ staff

    For assets where the majority of building users are not staff, e.g. retail centers, the above requirements apply to staff only. In addition, the following must be provided for visitors:

    d. 5% of the total number of customer parking lot spaces (excluding disabled spaces and parent-and-child spaces where provided). This is subject to providing a minimum of 10 cycle racks. Any asset that provides at least 50 customer cycle storage spaces will comply regardless of the number of

parking spaces. The staff spaces must be provided in addition to customer spaces and while they do not need to be separate from customer spaces, this is encouraged.

2. **Cycle rack requirements:**

    a. Fixtures to lock bicycles are not required for locked sheds.

    b. The majority of racks are within 329 feet of the building entrance.

3. **Lockers:**

    The number of lockers is at least equal to the number of cycle spaces provided, and these should be accessible by both male and female users. For assets where the majority of building users are not staff, e.g. retail centers, this requirement applies to staff only.

4. **Shower requirements:**

    a. One shower is provided for every 10 cycle storage racks and both male and female users are accommodated.

    b. These are available for others to use in addition to cyclists.

    For assets where the majority of building users are not staff, e.g. retails centers, this requirement applies to staff only.

5. **Drying space:**

    Should be a specially designed and designated space (a plant room does not comply) and heating/ventilation should be adequate. For assets where the majority of building users are not staff, e.g. retails centers, this requirement applies to staff only.

6. **Proximity to public transport:**

    For sites where at least 50% of the available credits for BREEAM USA In-Use issue TRA 02 Proximity to public transport have been awarded (rounded to the nearest whole credit), the number of compliant cycle spaces can be reduced by 50%. This reduction will also reduce the requirement for compliant shower/lockers by the same margin.

7. **Public bicycle sharing systems:**

    Bicycle sharing systems are increasingly popular and diverse systems have appeared over the past few years in major cities and towns whereby a number of bicycles are made available for shared use amongst people who do not own a bicycle. The central concept of many of the systems is free or affordable access to bicycles for city transport in order to reduce the use of automobiles for short trips inside the city thereby diminishing traffic congestion, noise and air-pollution.

    Up to 50% of the BREEAM cycle racks requirement may be provided by a public bicycle sharing system where it complies with the following:

    a. The program is implemented by the municipality or through a public-private partnership.

    b. The system must be open to casual users who wish to use them for one-way rides to work, education or shopping centers.

c. Bicycles are available at unattended urban locations; and they operate in a manner that could be seen as 'bicycle transit'.

d. Service terminals must be available throughout the city.

e. The average distance between service terminals is 1,641 feet maximum in inner city areas.

f. A service terminal is available within 1,641 feet of the main building entrance.

g. The station terminals do not need to comply with the cycle rack requirements listed above.

The number of compliant facilities is calculated based on the total number of cycle racks required. For retail projects, public bicycle racks can also count towards the number of customer cycle racks required (i.e. whereas the total number of cycle racks may be reduced by 50%, the number of compliant facilities may not be reduced).

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of (where applicable):
    a. cycle racks
    b. showers
    c. lockers
    d. changing facilities
    e. drying space

Additional information

Other information

If the number of cycling facilities that should be supplied is not a whole number, it must be rounded up to the nearest whole number. For example, where the number of cycling facilities that should be provided is calculated to be 10.2, the actual number of facilities that must be provided is 11.

Asset Performance TRA 02 – Proximity to public transport

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
8	No

Question

Is the asset within walking distance of public transport networks that operate a frequent service?

Aim

To ensure appropriate public transport provision is available to building occupants.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
1	Public transport network over 0.75 miles away from the building via a safe pedestrian route, with a 30 minute service frequency at peak times
2	Public transport network over 0.75 miles away from the building via a safe pedestrian route, with a 15 minute service frequency at peak times
3	Public transport network within 0.75 miles of the building via a safe pedestrian route, with a 30 minute service frequency at peak times
4	A chartered bus service is provided at the beginning and end of the working day
4	Public transport network within 1,641 feet of the building via a safe pedestrian route, with a 30 minute service frequency at peak times
6	Public transport network within 0.75 miles of the building via a safe pedestrian route, with a 15 minute service frequency at peak times
8	Public transport network within 1,641 feet of the building via a safe pedestrian route, with a 15 minute service frequency at peak times
0	No public transport network in place that meets the above criteria
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The distance must be measured via safe pedestrian routes; such as sidewalks and safe crossing points, or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points. The distance should **NOT** be measured in a straight line.

Evidence

1. Annotated map demonstrating the route and distance to public transport nodes.
2. Photographic evidence public transport networks and safe pedestrian route(s).
3. Copies of public transport network timetables.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Safe pedestrian routes include, but are not limited to: sidewalks and safe crossing points or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points.

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance TRA 03 – Proximity to amenities

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is the asset within walking distance of amenities?

Aim

To ensure appropriate amenities are available to building occupants.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
1	A café or similar type of food service within 0.75 miles of the building via a safe pedestrian route
2	A café or similar type of food service within 1,641 feet of the building via a safe pedestrian route
2	A café or similar type of food service and bank/cash machine or mail facilities or post box within 0.75 miles of the building via a safe pedestrian route
4	A café or similar type of food service and bank/cash machine or mail facilities or post box within 1,641 feet of the building via a safe pedestrian route
0	None of the above
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. All amenities listed must be open during employee working hours.

Evidence

1. Where amenities listed are external to the asset:
    a. Annotated map demonstrating the route and distance to amenities listed by the client.
    b. Photographic evidence of listed amenities and safe pedestrian route(s).
2. Where amenities listed are contained within the asset:
    a. Asset floor plans with location of amenities indicated.
    b. Photographic evidence of listed amenities and safe pedestrian route(s).

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Safe pedestrian routes include, but are not limited to: sidewalks and safe crossing points or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points.

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance TRA 04 – Pedestrian and cyclist safety

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Are service delivery access points, routes, and maneuvering areas on-site independent from parking areas, pedestrian, and cyclist access points and routes?

Aim

To recognize and encourage the provision of safe and secure pedestrian and cycle access routes.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. If the building does not have any external areas and internal access is directly from the safe pedestrian routes, then the building assessed is compliant.

Evidence

1. Copy of site map indicating location of service delivery areas in relation to other areas to indicate that these are separate.
2. Photographic evidence of the service delivery areas and safe pedestrian route(s)

Additional information

Other information

Safe pedestrian routes include, but are not limited to: sidewalks and safe crossing points or, where provided, dedicated pedestrian crossing points.

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Water

Category summary table

Issue Reference	Title	Credits available
WAT 01	Water metering	6
WAT 02	Water efficient equipment: Toilets	4
WAT 03	Water efficient equipment: Urinals	4
WAT 04	Water efficient equipment: Hand washing sinks	4
WAT 05	Water efficient equipment: Showers	4
WAT 06	Water efficient equipment: Appliances	4
WAT 07	Leak prevention	4
WAT 08	Leak detection system	4
WAT 09	Isolation valves	4
WAT 10	Reducing utility-supplied water consumption	2
Total credits available		**40**

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Asset Performance WAT 01 – Water metering

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
6	No

Question

To what level is water consumption metered?

Aim

To ensure water consumption can be monitored and therefore enable building users to target reductions in water consumption.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	Not metered
2	Site – Where water consumption is metered for the whole site
4	Building – Where water consumption is metered at the whole building level
6	All water-consuming plant or building areas that consume 10% or more of the building's total water demand are either fitted with sub meters or have water monitoring equipment integral to the plant or area AND Where the building is multi-tenanted: water consumption is metered per tenanted area
6	No water supply to the building
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. A water meter on the utility supply to the site or building (whichever is applicable) including where water is supplied via a well or other private source.
2. Evidence provided demonstrates that a water meter is installed on relevant water supplies to the specific response given in the credit criteria.
3. Each water meter has the ability to have instantaneous reading (e.g. has a pulsed output) and enables connection to a Building Management System (BMS) or similar for the monitoring of water consumption.
4. Where water is metered and monitored at site level, the water meters must measure all water that is utilized on site, including, but not limited to:

a. Utility supply

b. Well supply

c. Rainwater harvesting

d. Grey water harvesting

5. If there is no water supply to the building, the Assessor must validate this.

Evidence

1. Copies of site/building/asset plans, indicating where water meters are located.
2. Photographic evidence of installed water meters.
3. Copy of most current water meter readings to confirm that all meters are working.

Additional information

-

Asset Performance WAT 02 – Water efficient equipment: Toilets

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What percentage of toilets have been fitted with low flush technologies?

Aim

To reduce water consumption by encouraging the specification of water efficient toilets.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0%
1	All toilets ≤1.6 gallons per flush
2	≥75% of toilets ≤1.2 gallon per flush (all remaining toilets ≤1.6 gallons per flush)
3	All toilets ≤1.2 gallon per flush
4	≥50% of toilets ≤0.8 gallon per flush (all remaining toilets ≤1.2 gallon per flush)

Assessment criteria

1. An adequate proportion of toilets within the asset need to be checked by the Assessor. It is not necessary to check all toilets. At least 10% of toilets within the building should be observed.
2. For dual flush toilets the effective flush volume will need to be calculated, an explanation and worked example is available in the additional information section.

Evidence

1. Manufacturer/supplier literature of installed toilets (if available).
2. Photographic evidence of low-flush toilets.
3. Copies of asset floor plans indicating the location and quantity of toilets.
4. If manufacturer information is unavailable:
    a. Photographic evidence of information on cistern to identify flow rate.
    b. Copy of liaisons with manufacturer confirming toilet is low flush.
    c. Assessor comment to justify the reason why the toilet is deemed to be low flush.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Effective flush volume (EFV) is the volume of water needed to clear the toilet and transport any contents far enough to avoid blocking the drain. The effective flush volume of a single flush toilet is the volume of water used for one flush.

The effective flush volume of a **dual flush toilet** is the ratio of full flush to reduced flush. This is taken to be one full flush for every three reduced flushes for non-residential buildings.

The effective flush volume would therefore be calculated as follows, using a 1.6/1.28 gallon dual flush volume toilet as an example:

$$\frac{(1.6gal \times 1) + (1.28gal \times 3)}{4} = 1.36galEFV$$

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance WAT 03 – Water efficient equipment: Urinals

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Does the asset contain low water use or waterless urinals?

Aim

To reduce water consumption.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Timed flush urinals with ≤0.8 gallons per flush
2	Timed flush urinals with ≤0.3 gallons per flush
2	Passive Infra Red (PIR) controlled flush urinals with ≤0.8 gallons per flush
3	Passive Infra Red (PIR) controlled flush urinals with ≤0.3 gallons per flush
4	Waterless urinals
4	There are no urinals present in the asset

Assessment criteria

1. Where multiple fittings are specified with various flow rates, the flow rates for each type of fitting will need to be calculated and the average flow rate determined by the Assessor.
2. Water consumption figures will need to be derived from the manufacturer's product information to determine the consumption of the urinals as follows:
    a. Urinals: Flush volume in gallons/use for single use flush urinals.
    b. Cistern fed systems: The flushing frequency/hour and cistern capacity in gallons.
3. If manufacturer information is unavailable it should be possible to tell whether urinals are waterless, however Assessor should provide the manufacturer and model number with photographic evidence if this is the case within the Assessor comments section of the assessment.
4. If there are no urinals within the asset, the Assessor must verify that this is due to one of the following reasons:
    a. The asset is female access only (for example, a women's dormitory)

b. The asset contains unisex toilets only

Evidence

1. An adequate proportion of urinals within the asset need to be checked by the Assessor to determine whether they are low flush / waterless, although it is not necessary to check them all. At least 10% of urinals within the building should be observed.
2. Photographic evidence of installed urinals.
3. Manufacturer/supplier literature of installed urinals (if available).
4. Copies of asset floor plans indicating the location and quantity of urinals highlighting which urinals are waterless.

Additional information

-

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Asset Performance WAT 04 – Water efficient equipment: Hand washing sinks

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What percentage of the hand washing sink faucets are designed for low water use?

Aim

To reduce water consumption by encouraging specification of water efficient equipment.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0%
1	≥1 to <25%
2	≥25 to <50%
3	≥50 to <75%
4	≥75%

Assessment criteria

1. Hand washing sink faucets must have a maximum flow rate that is less than 1.6 gallons per minute.
2. Hand washing sink must have automatic control (e.g. push button with an auto shutoff or Active Infra-Red Faucets).

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of installed hand washing sinks.
2. Manufacturer/supplier literature of water efficient specifications.
3. Copies asset floor plans identifying the location and quantity of hand wash sinks.
4. An adequate proportion of hand washing sinks within the asset must be checked by the Assessor. It is not necessary to check all faucets. At least the following percentage of hand washing sinks within the asset must be observed and confirmed to meet the credit criteria:
    a. ≥1 to <25 – 5%
    b. ≥25 to <50 – 10%
    c. ≥50 to <75 – 15%

d. >75 – 20%

5. Manufacturer documentation should be provided for the hand washing sink faucets that have been installed and observed within the building in order to confirm that they are low water use.
6. Where manufacturer information is not available, evidence must be provided that confirms that the faucets meet the stated criteria. This could include measured flow rates or confirmation from the manufacturer that the installed faucets meet the criteria.

Additional information

Other information

Only faucets that are specifically used in hand washing sinks are applicable. This requirement does not apply to:

a. 'Scrub' facilities in clinical areas of healthcare buildings
b. Faucets provided to janitors and other cleaning staff
c. Kitchen and external faucets
d. Other instances where such fittings would be inappropriate for medical/health-related reasons (such instances must be justified by the design the building management)

Types of low water use hand washing sink faucets include, but are not limited to:

a. Spray faucets
b. Aerated faucets
c. Press or push button faucets with an auto-shutoff
d. Faucets with user sensors such as Active Infra-Red faucets

Asset Performance WAT 05 – Water efficient equipment: Showers

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What percentage of the showers is low water use?

Aim

To reduce water consumption associated with the use of showers.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0
1	≥1 to <25%
2	≥25 to <50%
3	≥50 to <75%
4	≥75%
4	No showers in place

Assessment criteria

1. In order to be awarded the relevant credits showers must have a maximum flow rate less than 1.6 gallons per minute.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of installed showers.
2. Manufacturer/supplier literature of water efficient specifications.
3. Copies of asset floor plans demonstrating location of changing facilities.
4. Manufacturer documentation should be provided for the showers that have been installed and observed within the building in order to confirm that they are low water use.
5. Where manufacturer information is not available, evidence must be provided that confirms that the showers meet the stated criteria. This could include measured flow rates or confirmation from the manufacturer that the installed faucets meet the criteria.

Additional information

Other information

An adequate proportion of showers within the asset need to be checked by the Assessor, although it is not necessary to check them all. At least the following percentage of showers within the asset should be observed regarding credit criteria:

a. ≥1 to <25 – 5%

b. ≥25 to <50 – 10%

c. ≥50 to <75 – 15%

d. >75 – 20%

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance WAT 06 – Water efficient equipment: Appliances

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What percentage of the water consuming appliances are low water use (dishwashers, washing machines)?

Aim

To reduce water consumption associated with the use of appliances.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0%
1	≥1% to <25%
2	≥25% to <50%
3	≥50% to <75%
4	≥75%
4	No water consuming appliances in place

Assessment criteria

1. In order to be awarded the relevant credits, baseline water usage of installed equipment must be equal to or below the figures as outlined in Table 12.

Table 12:Water consumption baseline levels of appliances.

Component	Baseline
Commercial sized dishwasher	1.8 gallons per rack
Domestic sized dishwasher (if applicable)	3.4 gallons per cycle
Commercial/industrial sized washing machine	1.3 gallons per lb
Domestic sized washing machine (if applicable)	15.8 gallons per load

2. Only water consuming appliances that are under the operational control of the building owner and/or are fitted by the building owner must be assessed.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of listed appliances.
2. Manufacturer specifications of appliances installed in the asset.
3. Copies of asset floor plans with marked location of appliances installed.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Appliances: products with a useful life of approximately two or more years and that are replaced infrequently.

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance WAT 07 – Leak detection system

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Does the asset have an automated leak detection system?

Aim

To reduce the impact of water leaks that may otherwise go undetected.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. A leak detection system detects higher than normal flow rates at meters and/or sub-meters. It does not necessarily require a system that directly detects water leakage along part or the whole length of the water supply system. The system can be flow based or sensor based.
2. The leak detection system should be:
    a. Able to easily identify any detected leaks
    b. Activated when a continuous flow of water passes through the water meter at a flow rate above a pre-set minimum for a pre-set period of time
3. The system does not need to cut off the water supply when the alarm is triggered.
4. Where there is a water supply company meter at the site/building boundary, it may be necessary to install a separate flow meter (or alternative measurement system) just after the water supply company meter to detect leaks. However, if the water supply company agrees to some form of leak detection being installed on their meter, this would also be acceptable.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of leak detection system.
2. Manufacturer specifications of system.

Additional information

-

Asset Performance WAT 08 – Leak prevention

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are toilet areas fitted with controls that isolate water supply when they are unoccupied?

Aim

To reduce the impact of water leaks in areas that are not occupied that may otherwise go undetected.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Shut off systems may control combined restrooms (for example the male and female restrooms within a core) provided that the source of the leak within that area can be isolated once the building is occupied (i.e. the facilities management team are able to pin point the position of the leak whether it is in the male or female restrooms).
2. Proximity detection shut off is not required for each individual toilet, but the requirement is for the cold water supply to be isolated for each restroom block on a floor.
3. The requirements of this credit apply to facilities with a single restroom (potentially within smaller or low occupancy buildings). In these instances, shut-off can be provided via the same switch that controls lighting (whether proximity detection or a manual switch). Programmable timed controllers linked to the shut-off device are an acceptable means of compliance for facilities in this type of space, where constant use is to be expected during operating hours.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of water shut off controls.
2. Manufacturer specifications of shut off controls (if available).
3. Systematic diagram showing the areas of isolation.

Additional information

-

Asset Performance WAT 09 – Isolation valves

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What percentage of water using appliances have isolation valves fitted?

Aim

To minimize unnecessary water consumption due to defects and to minimize disruption during maintenance.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0%
1	≥1% to <25%
2	≥25% to <50%
3	≥50% to <75%
4	≥75%

Assessment criteria

1. Evidence illustrates that isolation valves are installed for relevant equipment within the asset. Relevant equipment includes (but is not limited to):
    a. Hand washing sink
    b. Shower
    c. Toilet
    d. Urinal
    e. Washing machine
    f. Dishwasher
    g. Refrigerator/ice machine
2. If isolation valves are fitted to areas in which water using appliances are installed, such as shower blocks and restroom areas, the aim of the credit would be met. These areas can be included in the overall percentage.
3. Isolation valves are classified as any valve in the pipe that prevents the flow of water to specific equipment (for example, toilets).

4. Isolation valves must be easily accessible.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of water isolation controls.
2. Manufacturer specifications of isolation controls (if available).

Additional information

-

Asset Performance WAT 10 – Reducing utility-supplied water consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Does the asset use site-derived alternative water supply for any use?

Aim

To reduce the demand for utility-supplied water within the asset.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Legislative requirements prevent use of site-derived alternative water supply within the asset
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Both potable and non-potable water obtained from non-utility sources count towards the credit criteria. Sources might include (but are not limited to):
    a. Grey water such as reclaimed wastewater, refrigeration system condensate, ice machine condensate, steam system condensate
    b. Rain water
    c. Well water

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of site-derived alternative water source.
2. Manufacturer information.
3. Where legislative requirements prevent the use of site-derived alternative water supply, copy of relevant legislation.

Additional information

-

Materials

Category summary table

Issue Reference	Title	Credits available
MAT 01	Condition survey	4
MAT 02	Security advice	4
MAT 03	Intruder alarm system	4
MAT 04	Alarm system monitoring	4
MAT 05	Natural hazards	4
MAT 06	Future adaptation	4
MAT 07	Designing for robustness	2
Total credits available		**26**

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance MAT 01 – Condition survey

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

If a condition survey has been completed within the last 5 years, has work been conducted to rectify any issues/defects identified?

Aim

To encourage asset/property owners to understand the physical condition of their property, and manage any deficiencies to structural, mechanical, electrical, plumbing, fire protection, communications and life safety systems.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	Asset is over 5 years old and a condition survey has not been carried out within the last 5 years
0	A condition survey has been carried out, however no work has been carried out to rectify issues/defects identified
1	A condition survey has been carried out and an action plan is in place which establishes when issues will be rectified
2	A condition survey has been carried out and all major issues/defects have been rectified
3	A condition survey has been carried out and all major issues/defects have been rectified and an action plan confirms when the remaining issues will be rectified
4	A condition survey has been carried out and all identified issues/defects have been rectified
4	The asset is less than 5 years old and no condition survey has been undertaken
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. A condition survey should be conducted by a competent person and assess the condition of the asset, in terms of the main building elements; both external/internal envelope and equipment.
2. A condition survey typically includes (but is not limited to):
    a. Structural condition
    b. Condition of mechanical components

c. Condition of electrical components

d. Condition of plumbing

e. Fire protection

f. Communications and life safety systems

g. Health and Safety conditions and environmental conditions; including, but not limited to:

i. Damp

ii. Cold

iii. Drafts

iv. Acoustic and noise penetration

v. Ventilation

vi. Daylight

3. Criteria for repairing or renewing defective elements should be established to ensure work prioritization.

Evidence

1. Records of previous condition surveys.
2. Copy of action plan.
3. Photographic and/or documentation to demonstrate the address of defects.
4. Assets that are less than 5 years old will require appropriate public records of property registration to demonstrate the building's age.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Competent person: a person that is trained and qualified to conduct condition surveys in accordance with legislative requirements.

Major issues are issues that need to be addressed in order for the building to operate and function correctly and do not directly adversely affect the health of the occupants.

Minor issues are issues that can be addressed at a later stage as these do not directly adversely affect the health of the occupants or the operation of the building.

Asset Performance MAT 02 – Security advice

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

How were security measures for the building and its content decided upon?

Aim

To ensure all property related security issues are identified by a competent third-party organization and addressed in order to reduce risks from crime.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No security measures in place (other than locks for doors)
1	A competent third-party organization was consulted to identify security issues and minor issues have been addressed in accordance to the suggested actions
2	A competent third-party organization was consulted to identify security issues and all major issues have been addressed in accordance to the suggested actions
4	A competent third-party organization was consulted to identify security issues and all identified issues/defects have been rectified
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. A consultation involving a competent third-party organization has been carried out to identify potential weaknesses of property perimeters and building interiors.
2. Issues raised by consultation are addressed in accordance with report recommendations.

Evidence

1. Copy of the report and actions raised from the survey by a suitably competent and qualified third-party organization.
2. Photographic evidence and/or documentation to demonstrate the rectification of issues/defects.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Competent third-party: an organization that has detailed knowledge of the security industry of the country in which the asset is located, with regards to apparatus and strategies that an organization might use to enhance the security of their asset. This includes knowing what is appropriate and why it is technically beneficial.

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance MAT 03 – Intruder alarm system

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Has the asset been fitted with an intruder alarm system that is certified to National or International standard or is the asset manned by a security guard 24 hours a day?

Aim

To ensure the asset is equipped with appropriate security systems to prevent any damage to the asset.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. If devices are installed a security grading should have been conducted to determine design requirements.
2. 24-hour guard security should be undertaken by trained staff either employed by the organization or contracted to look after the site.

Evidence

1. Assets that have intruder alarms will require:
    a. Documentation demonstrating intruder alarm system is approved to an appropriate National or International standard.
    b. Photographic evidence of the intruder alarm system.
2. Assets that have 24-hour guard security will require:
    a. Company details and contract agreement of the organization providing security.

Additional information

Other information

A security grading is given to an alarm system by a certification body, e.g UL or LPCB. This might be useful as a particular alarm grading might be needed in order to qualify for insurance coverage on a business premises. This will be dependent on the nature of the risk that is being protected regarding the asset.

Asset Performance MAT 04 – Alarm system monitoring

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are the alarm systems (fire, intruder) connected to a monitored facility that is operational 24 hours a day?

Aim

To ensure an asset has appropriate response to a fire and break-in when the building is unoccupied.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Alarm receiving centers (ARC) should be staffed at all times.
2. Emergency response procedures should be in place with contractors and emergency services to enable the ARC monitoring function to be maintained while the emergency incident is investigated.

Evidence

1. Documentation confirming the asset alarm systems are connected to a monitored facility.
2. Relevant contractual documents with the monitoring facility.

Additional information

-

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Asset Performance MAT 05 – Natural hazards

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Have emergency plans been developed to deal with threats from all relevant natural hazards?

Aim

To ensure the asset is protected against the potential impacts of natural hazards.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
4	No, asset is in an area where no risks exist

Assessment criteria

1. The emergency plan includes a coherent emergency strategy for all **relevant** natural hazards for the time period specified.
2. Relevant natural hazard risks/plans should have been identified by competent individuals/relevant organizations.
3. Natural hazards are natural processes or phenomena occurring in the biosphere or crust that may constitute a damaging event. The list below is not intended to be exhaustive, but provides an indication of the type of hazards that should be considered to meet the definition. Other natural hazards may be relevant under this issue. Relevance will be dependent on local geography, geology, hydrology and climate factors and the Assessor should be satisfied that appropriate local expertise has been sought by the client/design team to identify these fully:
    a. Floods (addressed in Asset Performance POL 02 – Flood risk assessment)
    b. Natural disasters of geological origin such as volcanic eruptions, earthquakes and landslides
    c. Natural disasters of climatic or meteorological origin such as droughts, avalanches, wave surges including tsunamis and tidal waves, and wind storms including cyclones, hurricanes, tornadoes, tropical storms, and typhoons
    d. Wildfires
4. Emergency plans have been delegated to relevant individuals within the organization.

5. If there is no perceived threat from natural hazards this should be outlined in appropriate documentation from a relevant authority or expert.

Evidence

1. Copy of relevant natural hazard emergency plans.
2. For assets that list no natural hazard risk exists:
    a. Documented confirmation from relevant agency/experts that the asset is located in an area of no risk.

Additional information

Other information

The metric used to describe risk from a natural hazard is the return period or recurrence interval, a ratio that describes the time elapsed between incidences of the natural hazard in question. This metric is used as a rough estimate and will not predict the actual time period between natural hazards and is calculated using historical data.

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance MAT 06 – Future adaptation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Does the design of the asset allow future adaptation to meet changing demands such as variations in use and functionality?

Aim

To recognize and encourage buildings which have been built to allow a degree of flexibility for future usage.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. The building should have been designed with a degree of flexibility to ensure that future changes in use are possible. This flexibility could consist of (but is not limited to):
    a. Partition walls that can be easily re-positioned.
    b. Circuitry/plumbing that can be easily removed/adapted when areas are unoccupied or when there is increased usage required; for example lighting removal or addition etc.
    c. Other design features deemed suitable by the Assessor.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of (internal) design features that allow for flexibility as stated or deemed relevant by the Assessor.
2. Plans, studies, reports or other documentation that reflect that functional adaptability was taken into consideration during the design process.

Additional information

-

Asset Performance MAT 07 – Designing for robustness

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Does the asset contain features that protect exposed elements of the building and landscaping from damage from pedestrian traffic, internal vehicular/cart movement, and external vehicular collision?

Aim

To minimize the frequency of building part replacement, maximizing materials optimization.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Examples of features that protect exposed elements of the building include, but are not limited to:
    a. Asset walls separated from vehicular traffic by a path or barrier
    b. Wall/corner guards
    c. Traffic posts
2. Examples of features that protect exposed elements of landscaping include, but are not limited to:
    a. Pathways which are easily accessible and dissuade building users to walk across landscaped areas
    b. Landscaped areas are fenced off

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of asset protection infrastructure listed by the client.
2. Plans, studies, reports or other documentation that reflect that robustness was taken into consideration during the design process.

Additional information

-

Waste

Category summary table

Issue Reference	Title	Credits available
WST 01	Storage of operational waste	4
Total credits available		**4**

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance WST 01 – Storage of operational waste

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is waste collected and separated at a central location?

Aim

To ensure assets have adequate space for waste stream separation on site, allowing for recycling to take place and thus reduce waste being sent to landfill or for incineration.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Sufficient space to separate 1 waste stream
2	Sufficient space to separate 2 waste stream or, where waste is collected commingled, separated in 2 waste streams off-site
3	Sufficient space to separate 3 waste stream or, where waste is collected commingled, separated in 3 waste streams off-site
4	Sufficient space to separate 4 or more waste streams or, where waste is collected commingled, separated in 4 waste streams off-site
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Separate containers should be provided for different waste streams (if this is necessary), examples of these include (but are not limited to):
    a. Glass
    b. Paper
    c. Aluminum cans
    d. Plastic
    e. Other
2. Different colored glass separation is classed as one waste stream.

3. If recyclables are stored or collected in the same container (commingled), the Assessor must verify that the waste collector separates the commingled waste in the identified waste streams.
4. Containers located in this central area should:
    a. Be grouped together
    b. Be easily identifiable in terms of the waste streams they hold
5. Containers should be in an appropriate location, easily accessible to those responsible for disposing of waste.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of the central storage space.
2. If waste is commingled, records from waste collector that commingled waste is separated in the waste streams as identified.

Additional information

Other information

Commingled recycling allows for mixed recyclables to be collected in one container. Recyclable materials including glass, plastics, cardboard, paper, metals and aluminum cans and containers make up commingled recycling. Compostable materials should be collected separately from recyclables.

Land Use and Ecology

Category summary table

Issue Reference	Title	Credits available
LE 01	Planted area	4
LE 02	Ecological features of planted area	2
Total credits available		**6**

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance LE 01 – Planted area

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What percentage of the asset's footprint has been planted?

Aim

To measure and encourage planted areas within the asset's footprint that enhance the asset's site ecology.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0%
1	≤10%
2	>10% to ≤40%
3	>40% to ≤70%
4	>70% to 100%

Assessment criteria

1. Planted area can contain or be a mix of horizontal and vertical planting.
2. Vertical habitats or green walls can be:
    a. Free standing or part of the building, as long as these are located within the asset's footprint.
    b. Partially or completely covered with vegetation and, in some cases, soil or an inorganic growing medium.

Evidence

1. Visual inspection of planted areas and ecological structures.
2. Photographic evidence of planted areas and/or installed ecological structures.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Green roof: A green roof is a roof that is partially or completely covered with vegetation and soil or another growing medium, situated on top of a waterproof membrane. These systems can be either intensive or extensive.

a. Intensive Green roof systems have a deep growing medium, which allow the establishment of trees and shrubs. The depth of the growing medium requires extra loading requirements within the holding structure and requires a complex irrigation system for maintenance.

b. Extensive green roof systems have a thin growing medium and require minimal maintenance, and in general do not require irrigation.

Brown roof: A brown roof allows local plant species to populate the roof over time. Brown roofs are crafted primarily to replicate local brownfield conditions through the use of by-products of developments: Brick rubble, crushed concrete, and subsoils. Such designs are naturally colonized by vegetation, non-vegetated loose substrates also provide habitat for a range of invertebrates and birds.

Planted Area: Horizontal planted areas can be partially or completely covered in vegetation but cannot be bare soil.

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance LE 02 – Ecological features of planted area

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

What ecological features have been planted/installed in the planted area(s) of the asset's footprint?

Aim

To measure and recognize ecological features that have been installed in the planted areas of the asset's footprint in order to improve the ecological value of the site.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Planters (containing living plants) outside
	Traditional planted areas, such as planting in parking lots and planting around the asset
	Other planted areas, such as green roofs and green walls
	Features to assist local fauna
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Native floral species or those with a known attraction or benefit to local wildlife can be considered to enhance the ecological value.
2. Features to assist local fauna include (but are not limited to):
    a. Bird boxes
    b. Bat boxes
    c. Insect boxes

    Note: Assessors must verify that these features are installed and maintained correctly.
3. Planted areas must be of a viable size to support the flora and fauna within them.

Evidence

1. Visual inspection of ecological structures.
2. Photographic evidence of installed ecological structures.

Pollution

Category summary table

Issue Reference	Title	Credits available
POL 01	Pollution prevention	4
POL 02	Flood risk assessment	4
POL 03	Surface water runoff impact mitigation	2
POL 04	Impacts of refrigerants	4
POL 05	Refrigerant leak detection system	4
POL 06	NO_x emissions	4
Total credits available		**22**

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance POL 01 – Pollution prevention

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are there light liquid separators fitted within the drainage system to vehicular areas and/or grease separators/filters for kitchen facilities, where required?

Aim

To reduce the risk of polluting natural waterways through contaminated surface run-off and/or grease from kitchen facilities entering drainage systems.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes, light liquid interceptors are installed within the drainage system to vehicular areas AND/OR grease separators/filters are installed within kitchen facilities, where required
4	Asset does not require light liquid separators or grease separators

Assessment criteria

1. Light liquid separators must be installed for all vehicular areas, and/or grease separators/filters must be installed within kitchen facilities, unless it can be demonstrated that they are not required. Where either of these areas is not present, the criterion only applies to the vehicular areas. For example, if there are vehicular areas but no kitchen facilities, the criterion only applies to the vehicular areas.
2. Where it can be demonstrated that drainage or wash down facilities do not lead water from inside an underground or covered area to natural waterways, such areas comply with the requirements by default.
3. An asset will not require light liquid separators or grease separators/filters if there are no parking and/or kitchen facilities on site.
4. The following site areas (where present) require oil separators in surface water drainage systems:
    a. Parking lots larger than 8,611 ft^2 or with 50 or more parking spaces
    b. Smaller parking lots discharging to a sensitive environment
    c. Areas where delivery vehicles are parked or maneuvered

d. Vehicle maintenance areas

e. Roads

f. Industrial sites where oil is stored or used

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of interceptor equipment on site.
2. Manufacturer details.
3. Site plans detailing location of interceptors.

Additional information

-

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance POL 02 – Flood risk assessment

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is the building located in a low or zero flood risk area?

Aim

To encourage the identification of flood risk and implement mitigation measures, where required.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
1	No, flood mitigation measures required but not implemented
2	No, flood mitigation measures required and implemented
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. The level of flood risk is based on the level of risk for the zone in which the asset is located. These are:
    a. Asset is located in a high flood risk zone
    b. Asset is located in a medium flood risk zone
    c. Asset is located in a low flood risk zone
    d. Asset is located in a zero flood risk zone
2. Flooding from the following sources must be taken into account:
    a. Fluvial (rivers)
    b. Tidal (sea)
    c. Surface water: sheet run-off from adjacent land (urban or rural)
    d. Groundwater: most common in low-lying areas underlain by permeable rock (aquifers)
    e. Sewers: combined, foul or surface water sewers
    f. Reservoirs, canals and other artificial sources
    g. A nearby functional flood plain (a zone that comprises land where water has to flow or be stored in times of flood)

3. A Flood Risk Assessments (FRAs) should be carried out to identify the flood risk of the area in which the building is located.
4. FRAs are usually carried out during pre-construction as part of planning documentation; however post-construction assessments also meet credit criteria.
5. FRAs need to be undertaken by the relevant organization/authority or a competent individual.
6. Where the asset is determined to be located in a low or zero flood risk area, no additional steps have to be taken to reduce and manage the impact of pollution associated with flooding.
7. It must be demonstrated that recommendations have been implemented.

Evidence

1. FRA documentation from relevant body or competent individual.
2. Information regarding relevant qualifications and experience of the person/organization that has carried out the FRA.
3. Photographic evidence of FRA recommendation implementation.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

A competent individual will have qualifications and experience relevant to designing flood prevention measures and calculations. Where complex flooding calculations and prevention measures are required, this must be a specialist hydrological engineer.

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Asset Performance POL 03 – Surface water runoff impact mitigation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Are there measures in place to minimize the rate of surface water runoff from the site?

Aim

To reduce the risk of waterway pollution and other environmental damage from storm water.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Appropriate measures to minimize surface water runoff include (but are not limited to):
    a. Low-impact Development (LID)
    b. Permeable surfaces
    c. Infiltration trenches
    d. (Roof) planting
    e. Rainwater tanks
2. Where applicable, measures should take account of the need to restrict discharge from chemical cleaning, which could include (but is not limited to):
    a. Secondary containment around drainage systems
    b. Double skinned containers
    c. Light liquid/oil separators
    d. Shut-off valves fitted to the site drainage system to prevent the escape of chemicals to natural watercourses (in the event of a spillage or secondary containment failure).

Evidence

1. Annotated photographic evidence of on-site measures.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Secondary containment: a structure made of an impermeable material that forms a barrier to retain liquids.

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance POL 04 – Impact of refrigerants

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What refrigerants are used in the asset refrigeration equipment?

Aim

To encourage the use of refrigerants with a low global warming potential (GWP) in refrigerant equipment.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	All refrigerants have a global warming potential of >10 (e.g. majority HFCs, HCFC, CFCs)
2	All refrigerants have a global warming potential of ≤10 (e.g. Propane, Butane)
4	All refrigerants have a global warming potential of ≤1 (e.g. Ammonia, Water, Carbon dioxide)
4	No refrigerants used
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The scope of this question will exclude domestic-scale refrigeration equipment and small plug-in chillers with integral refrigeration plant. Such systems on average have a charge 11 pounds or less, therefore in most circumstances individually installed or small multiple installations will not fall within scope of this credit. However, the Assessor should ask the client organization to confirm that the total charge is ≤11lbs.
2. The issue applies to all equipment and areas using refrigerants including, but not limited to:
    a. Walk-in cold storage enclosures
    b. Cold store services including, but not limited to; chilled water pipe work, refrigerant pipe work and ductwork
    c. Comfort cooling
3. A list of typical refrigerants with a low GWP can be found in Table 13 in the additional information section of this issue.
4. This issue applies to refrigerants used in equipment that is installed on-site only.

Evidence

1. Copy of manufacturer's information confirming the global warming potential of refrigerants used on site.

2. Photographic evidence of refrigerant packaging/systems (if necessary).
3. Statement from building manager indicating that the asset does not contain any systems that contain refrigerants.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

GWP: GWP is defined as the potential for global warming that a chemical has relative to 1 unit of carbon dioxide, the primary greenhouse gas. In determining the GWP of the refrigerant, the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) methodology using a 100-year Integrated Time Horizon (or ITH) should be applied.

Refrigerant: There are three main make-ups of refrigerants:

1. **Hydrogenated Fluorocarbon Refrigerants (HFCs)** are made up of hydrogen, fluorine, and carbon. Because they do not use a chlorine atom (which is used in most refrigerants) they are known to be one of the least damaging to our ozone.
2. **Hydrogenated Chlorofluorocarbon Refrigerants (HCFCs)** are made up of hydrogen, chlorine, fluorine, and carbon. These refrigerants contain minimal amounts of chlorine; they are not as detrimental to the environment as some other refrigerants.
3. **Chlorofluorocarbon Refrigerants (CFCs)** contain chlorine, fluorine and carbon. These refrigerants carry high amounts of chlorine so they are known for being the most hazardous to the ozone layer.

The use of CFCs and HCFCs as refrigerants has been addressed under the Montreal Protocol. Phase out programs have been agreed resulting in these substances no longer being used as refrigerants in all new build and most existing situations. The industry's favored replacements are currently HFCs, which are often potent global warming contributors. Hydrocarbons and ammonia-based refrigerants have low or zero GWP. These are now widely available and are valid alternatives to HFCs in all buildings, provided health and safety issues are fully addressed. United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) hosts a HCFC Help Centre, which contains information about the management, phase out of and alternatives to HCFCs. TABLE 13 contains a list of common refrigerant types with a low GWP.

Table 13: Common refrigerant types with a low GWP

R-Number	Chemical name	GWP 100-yr
R-30	Dichloromethane	9
R-170	Ethane	3
R-290	Propane	3
R-600	Butane	3
R-600a	Isobutane	3
R-702	Hydrogen	5.8
R-717	Ammonia	0
R-718	Water	<1
R-729	Air (nitrogen, oxygen, argon)	0
R-744	Carbon dioxide	1
R-1150	Ethylene	3
R-1234yf	2,3,3,3-Tetrafluoropropene	<1
R-1270	Propylene	3

Sources: The United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) '2010 Report of the Refrigeration, Air-conditioning and Heat Pumps Technical Options Committee'

EN 378-1:2008+A2:2012: Refrigerating systems and heat pumps - Safety and environmental requirements. Part 1: Basic requirements, definitions, classification and selection criteria - Annex E.

The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change 5th Assessment Report, Chapter 8, 'Anthropogenic and Natural Radiative Forcing', 2013

'Global environmental impacts of the hydrogen economy', Derwent *et al*, Int. J. Nuclear Hydrogen Production and Application, Vol. 1, No. 1, 2006

Asset Performance POL 05 – Refrigerant leak detection systems

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is there an automated refrigerant leak detection system in place for all equipment that use refrigerants?

Aim

To reduce the level of greenhouse gas emissions related to the leakage of refrigerants.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No leak detection system in place
3	Yes, warning alarm/lighting only
4	No refrigerants used
4	Yes, automatic shutdown and pump down of refrigerants and warning alarm/lighting
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. A leak detection system should be in place for systems that are installed in the building for the following uses, including, but not limited to:
    a. Comfort cooling
    b. Cold storage, including commercial food/drink display cabinets but excluding domestic appliances e.g. refrigerators and freezers
    c. Process based cooling loads e.g. servers/IT equipment
2. Refrigerant leak detection systems are not required and thus credits can be awarded if:
    a. Only small multiple hermetic systems are installed where the refrigerant charge in each unit is 11lbs or less.
    b. Environmentally benign refrigerants such as air and water, are used.
    c. Systems use solid refrigerants, where very little refrigerant will escape to the atmosphere in the event of system failure and leakage. This must be confirmed by the refrigeration system manufacturer.

Evidence

1. Operation and maintenance manuals detailing installation of leak detection system or site inspection.
2. In the case of solid refrigerants, manufacturer confirmation of minimal leak risk.

Additional information

-

BREEAM® USA

Asset Performance POL 06 – NO_x emissions

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Does the building generate nitrogen oxide (NO_x) emissions as a result of any on-site combustion of fuel to meet space heating or hot water demand?

Aim

To encourage and recognize the use of heating that minimizes NO_x emissions.

Available Credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	Yes
4	No

Assessment criteria

1. For this question NO_x is mainly emitted from high temperature combustion where trace elements of nitrogen exist in the fuel, such as: coal, oil and gas etc. However high-temperature oxidation of molecular nitrogen in the air used for combustion also releases NO_x, although temperatures need to be around 2,732°F (1,500°C) before this occurs.
2. If a 'No' answer is selected, Assessors must confirm that relevant equipment on site or within the asset does not utilize the fuel types that have been specified.

Evidence

1. Copy of manufacturer's details for equipment installed and their dry NO_X emissions rate in lb/Btu.
2. Photographic evidence of heating system(s).

Additional information

Relevant definitions

NO_x emissions: NO_x emissions are pollutant gases produced by the combustion of fuels. NO_x reacts with heat and sunlight to produce ozone that can cause serious respiratory problems. It also reacts with water to produce acid rain, which has a detrimental effect on ecosystems.

Part 2: Building Management

Assessment of how the asset is managed and its operational performance

Issue reference	Categories	Credits available
MAN	Management	46
HEA	Health & Wellbeing	37
ENE	Energy	60
TRA	Transport	-
WAT	Water	26
MAT	Materials	20
WST	Waste	-
LE	Land Use & Ecology	10
POL	Pollution	24
Total credits available		**223**

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Management

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
MAN 01	Building user guide	2
MAN 02	Building user education	2
MAN 03	Building user information	2
MAN 04	Operation and maintenance manuals	2
MAN 05	Maintenance procedures	6
MAN 06	Maintenance policy	4
MAN 07	Environmental policies and responsibilities	4
MAN 08	Environmental policies	4
MAN 09	Operating procedures: Energy reduction	4
MAN 10	Ventilation system leak testing	4
MAN 11	Green lease	4
MAN 12	Building management system review	4
MAN 13	Building adaptation	4
Total credits available		**46**

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Building Management MAN 01 – Building user guide

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Has relevant information from the building user guide been made accessible to all building users?

Aim

To recognize and encourage the provision of appropriate guidance for building users which enables them to understand and use the building.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Dedicated building/site specific guidance for the non-technical building user. The purpose of the guide is to help building users access, understand and operate the building efficiently and in a manner in keeping with the original design intent.
2. A Building User Guide will provide easily accessible and understandable information relevant to the following stakeholders:
    a. The building's staff (or where relevant residents)
    b. The non-technical facilities management team/building manager
    c. Other building users, e.g. visitors/community users
3. The content of the guide will be specific to the building type and end users, but broadly should include information on the following:
    a. Overview of the building and its environmental strategy, e.g. energy/water/waste efficiency policy/strategy and how users should engage with/deliver the policy/strategy
    b. Building services overview and access to controls, e.g. where to find them, what they control, how to operate effectively and efficiently etc.
    c. Pre-arrival information for visitors, e.g. access and security procedures/provisions
    d. Provision of, and access to, shared facilities
    e. Safety and emergency information/instructions

f. Building related operational procedures specific to building type/operation, e.g. laboratories

g. Building related incident reporting/feedback arrangements

h. Building related training information/links

i. Provision of, and access to, transport facilities, e.g. public transport, cyclist facilities, pedestrian routes etc.

j. Location of, and access to, local amenities

k. Renovation, refurbishment and maintenance arrangements/considerations

l. Links, references and relevant contact details

4. There is no requirement on the format the Building User Guide should take.

Evidence

1. Copies of relevant sections of the Building User Guide.
2. Details how relevant information has been made accessible to building users, examples include (but are not limited to):
    a) training schedules
    b) copy of emails to (new) building users
    c) copy of information pack handed to new building users

Additional information

-

Building Management MAN 02 – Building user education

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Are regular meetings or formal communications scheduled with occupants to discuss asset related issues (including environmental matters), and are such issues reported to the management?

Aim

To facilitate structured feedback and awareness to enable management staff and building occupants to understand how to better operate the building.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Meetings should be scheduled at appropriate intervals and locations, and when new procedures are adopted or systems/controls installed.
2. Formal communications should be scheduled at appropriate intervals, and when new procedures are adopted or systems/controls installed.
3. Formal communications include (but are not limited to):
    a. Standard feedback forms
    b. Dedicated email address
    c. Intranet feedback forms
    d. Standard forms in areas accessible by all staff

Evidence

1. Formal organizational documentation, such as meeting minutes.
2. Confirm with meeting attendees (identified via documented minutes for example) that meetings take place at reasonable intervals.

Additional information

-

Building Management MAN 03 – Building user information

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is a notice board or display area present within the asset to provide staff and visitors with information relating to the environmental policies and/or performance of the asset?

Aim

To recognize and encourage building management that informs staff and visitors about asset performance.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Evidence is provided to demonstrate that environmental matters related to the building/organization are communicated through the use of notice board(s) or building specific display areas.
2. Notice boards can report on information relating to:
    a. Health, Safety and Environmental policies
    b. Building/Organizational Operating Procedures
    c. Asset/organizational environmental performance
    d. Public transport
    e. Environmental best practice topics

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of notice board/display area.

Additional information

-

Building Management MAN 04 – Operation and maintenance manuals

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is a full set of operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals available and accessible by building management/facilities management staff?

Aim

To ensure adequate technical information is available to managers and contractors carrying out necessary management, maintenance and refurbishment duties.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Building O&M manuals should cover all current and relevant building services and building elements which may include (but are not limited to):
    a. Heating and cooling systems
    b. Water distribution systems
    c. Ventilation systems
    d. Lighting systems
    e. External shading systems
    f. Construction/specification details for building envelope
    g. Renewable and low carbon technologies (where present)

Evidence

1. List of all current and relevant building services and elements included in the O&M manuals.
2. Photocopy/photographic evidence of the front cover and table of contents of the O&M manuals.

Additional information

Other information

The Assessor is **NOT** required to assess the content of the O&M manuals, but must ensure that all relevant documents are available and accessible.

Where a building is managed by a building management contractor the manuals may be kept off site, but it is important that the information is in a form that makes it easy for contractors to obtain copies and make use of them on site.

Building Management MAN 05 – Maintenance procedures

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
6	No

Question

Please indicate where there is a maintenance policy/procedure in place for the following building elements/services.

Aim

To recognize and encourage:

- best practice maintenance of building elements/services
- the setting of periodic schedules to manage the efficiency of the assets infrastructure
- procedures that ensure building equipment is working efficiently
- that proactive and appropriate inspections are in place

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
2	Building envelope
2	Heating, Ventilation and Cooling (HVAC) systems, as applicable, and hot water
2	Lighting

Assessment criteria

1. In order to award the credits for HVAC systems, procedures should be in place to cover all HVAC systems, as applicable.
2. It can be demonstrated how the policy is implemented at the local level, either through general organizational operation, or project related initiatives and management strategies.
3. The maintenance policy/procedure should include an established periodic scheduled maintenance procedure allowing the building and its services to be maintained in good condition.
4. Maintenance reports should state as a minimum:
    a. Person or organization carrying out the maintenance
    b. Date the maintenance has been carried out
    c. Description of building service/element that has been maintained
    d. Outcomes of maintenance procedure

e. Actions following the maintenance procedure

f. Date indicating next maintenance interval

Evidence

1. Formal organizational documentation illustrating maintenance schedules.
2. Photocopy of reports of last maintenance procedure for the systems specified. This could be a cover page and table of contents and must clearly state:
    a. Person or organization carrying out the maintenance
    b. Date the maintenance has been carried out
    c. Description of building service/element that has been maintained.

Additional information

Other information

If a building is mechanically ventilated, typically all aspects would be in place; therefore, maintenance policies/procedures should be in place to cover these.

If a building is naturally ventilated, typically no aspects, or only ventilation, would be in place; therefore, a maintenance policy/procedure for these aspects does not have to be in place.

BREEAM® USA

Building Management MAN 06 – Maintenance policy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is/are the maintenance policy(ies) proactive or reactive?

Aim

To recognize and encourage proactive maintenance policies which enable the efficient operation of the building.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
1	Reactive policy only. Policy reviewed more than 1 year ago
2	Reactive policy only. Policy reviewed within the last year
3	Proactive maintenance policy. Policy reviewed more than 1 year ago
4	Proactive maintenance policy. Policy reviewed within the last year
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. A reactive maintenance policy is a policy where maintenance is carried out when problems are reported.
2. A proactive maintenance policy is a policy where maintenance is planned with regular intervals with the aim to prevent faults or breakdowns from occurring.
3. Information within the policy outlines:
    a. The scope and aims of the policy
    b. Who has endorsed and has responsibility for that policy
    c. How it will be implemented and policy objectives achieved
    d. Schedule specifying what maintenance has been and will be undertaken at set intervals
4. The maintenance policy/procedure should include an established periodic scheduled maintenance procedure allowing the building and plant to be maintained in good condition.
5. Maintenance policies should be regularly reviewed, at least when there are significant changes made to the building or equipment is replaced.

6. The facilities manager/building manager demonstrates (i.e. through examples) how the policy is implemented and affected at the local level, either through general organizational operation, or project related initiatives and management strategies.

Evidence

1. A copy of the maintenance policy.
2. A review schedule of the maintenance policy.

Additional information

-

BREEAM® USA

Building Management MAN 07 – Environmental policies and responsibilities

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Has an environmental management policy or plan been developed by the building management organization?

Aim

To recognize and encourage that environmental management provisions are in place.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	The building management organization has developed and implemented an environmental policy or plan approved by the board of directors/senior managers
2	The environmental policy or plan has been distributed throughout the building management organization and responsibilities have been set
3	The building management organization has developed and implemented an environmental management policy or plan, including scope, objectives and targets
4	The environmental management policy or plan has been certified to ISO 14001 or equivalent standards
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Where the environmental management policy or plan has been ISO 14001 certified, the Assessor does not need to check its content or structure.
2. The environmental management policy or plan must be in use and the review process must ensure that targets are set and actions plans are completed.
3. The environmental management plan or policy must be available and accessible by all building users.

Evidence

1. Signed copy of environmental policy document.
2. Evidence of communication of plan to staff.
3. List of responsibilities and persons identified as champions to help implement these responsibilities.

4. Where the Environmental Management System is third party certified: a copy of a valid Environmental Management System certificate must be provided.

Additional information

About ISO 14001

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 14000 series sets the criteria for companies and organizations of all types to identify and appropriately manage their environmental impacts and responsibilities. The ISO 14001 standard maps out a framework that an organization can follow to set up an effective environmental management system. Third party certification provides assurance to all stakeholders that the environmental management system is meets the international standard and is effectively implemented in the organization.

All ISO standards are reviewed every five years to establish if a revision is required to keep it current and relevant for the marketplace. Organizations currently certified to ISO 14001:2004 have three years to transition to the current standard, ISO 14001:2015.

Other information

Tailored Environmental Management Systems that are verified by a competent independent third party Assessor could meet the requirements to achieve 4 credits provided that the certifying body is internationally recognized.

BREEAM® USA

Building Management MAN 08 – Environmental policies

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Does the building management team have an environmental management policy in place that requires improvement targets to be met?

Aim

To recognize and encourage policies that aim to reduce the assets environmental impacts through defined improvement targets.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Yes, improvement targets have been set for energy consumption
2	Yes, improvement targets have been set for energy and water consumption
2	Yes, improvement targets have been set for energy and waste/recycling
3	Yes, improvement targets have been set for energy, water and waste/recycling
4	Yes, improvement targets have been set for all of the above, and additional resource performance and sustainability indicators
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Additional resource performance criteria could include biodiversity, pollution, procurement improvement etc.
2. The policy should have senior management approval.
3. The asset owner demonstrates (i.e. through examples) how the policy is implemented and affected at the local level, either through general organizational operation, or project related initiatives and management strategies.

Evidence

1. A copy of the environmental policy document highlighting areas in which improvement targets have been set.

2. Specific examples that demonstrate environmental impacts are being measured and put into a format that is easy to interpret, such as past annual figures being used as benchmarks within a spreadsheet etc.

Additional information

-

Building Management MAN 09 – Operating procedures: Energy reduction

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are operating procedures in place to help reduce energy consumption?

Aim

To recognize and encourage procedures that ensure energy consumption within the building is controlled and reduced where practicable.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No plans/procedures for minimizing energy consumption are in place
2	Yes - Energy reduction plans/procedures are in place
4	Yes - Energy reduction plans/procedures that include annual budgets for energy efficiency and reduction measures are in place
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The operating procedures should be formally documented and available to all relevant building users.
2. The operating procedures should be updated regularly to help ensure alignment with overall energy management plans (or other related documents). These updates should at least occur when:
    a. New energy consuming technologies/products or serviced are introduced in the asset.
    b. The energy management plan (or other related document) is reviewed.
3. Operating procedures to help reduce energy consumption should include (but are not limited to) the following:
    a. Allocation of adequate resources (financial and human) to energy management.
    b. There is a reliable and effective system for monitoring and reporting energy performance.
    c. Targeting all relevant areas and building users, active engagement of the workforce around energy issues.

Evidence

1. Copies of relevant documentation outlining the procedures that are in place to reduce energy consumption.

2. Update schedule
3. Description of how procedures are communicated with relevant building users.

Additional information

-

BREEAM® USA

Building Management MAN 10 – Ventilation system leak testing

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are duct and air handling unit leakage tests undertaken regularly, and are leaks rectified if identified?

Aim

To ensure ventilation systems operate at optimum efficiency.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	Not tested
4	Yes, tested regularly and leaks have been rectified
4	Not applicable: there are no duct or air handling units

Assessment criteria

1. Testing should be undertaken on a yearly basis, either by competent members of the facilities team or third party professionals.
2. Air duct and handling systems should be tested in accordance with local standards or best practice guidance (such as the Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association (SMACNA) *HVAC Air Duct Leakage Manual,* 2nd edition).

Evidence

1. Evidence of relevant building monitoring/testing procedures, this could be within relevant sections taken from Building Management MAN 04 – Operation and maintenance manuals
2. Copy of inspection logs.

Additional information

-

Building Management MAN 11 – Green lease

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are green lease agreements/contracts with tenants in place?

Aim

To encourage the implementation of lease agreements which contain incentives to actively engage tenants to consider energy, water, and waste efficient practices.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes, with qualitative targets
4	Yes, with qualitative and quantitative targets on at least lighting and energy

Assessment criteria

1. Green leases can include (but are not limited to):
    a. Energy efficiency targets
    b. Alteration
    c. Tenant handbook/Environmental policy/Energy management plan data
    d. Reporting
    e. Improvements/schedule of dilapidations
    f. Financial incentives
    g. Preferred maintenance contractors
    h. Separate energy, water, and/or gas metering
    i. Dispute resolution procedures
2. Where the asset is multi-tenanted, a green lease agreement/contract must be in place for at least 75% of the tenants.

Evidence

1. A copy of the tenant contract with the green lease section and scope highlighted or identified.

Additional information

-

Building Management MAN 12 – Building management system review

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are building management systems regularly reviewed to ensure they are fully functional and operating as intended?

Aim

To ensure building management systems are running efficiently and effectively.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes – monitored by in-house FM team
4	Yes – monitored and/or certified by accredited third party auditor
4	Not applicable – no building management system within asset

Assessment criteria

1. This issue is addressing full building management systems. Individual automated controls, such as PIRs controlling lighting, are **NOT** considered to be a building management system.
2. In-house FM team members must be trained to be able to operate the building management system to high efficiency standards.
3. Building management systems must be reviewed at least every 6 months.
4. Accredited third party professionals should be experts in how to operate the specific system that is being assessed.

Evidence

1. Copy of inspection log.
2. Written confirmation from qualified person (such as a member of the FM team or third party auditor) to the Assessor that there is no building management system in the building.

Additional information

-

Building Management MAN 13 – Functional adaptability

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is an asset strategy in place that outlines possible adaptation strategies/procedures to meet future demands, including those relating to climate change and changes in functionality?

Aim

To encourage the asset management team to have appropriate strategies/procedures in place that outline possible adaptation to the asset to meet to future demands.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. The scope of the strategy should cover (but is not limited to):
    a. The potential for major refurbishment, including replacing the façade.
    b. Design aspects that facilitate the replacement of all major equipment within the life of the building e.g. panels in floors/walls that can be removed without affecting the structure, providing lifting beams and hoists.
    c. The degree of adaptability of the internal environment to accommodate changes in working practices.
    d. The degree of adaptability of the internal physical space and external shell to accommodate change in-use or resilience to natural hazards.
    e. The extent of accessibility to local services, such as local power, data infrastructure etc.

Evidence

1. Copy of strategies/procedures for adaptation of the asset to meet changing future demands.

Additional information

-

Health and Wellbeing

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
HEA 12	Fresh air rates	4
HEA 13	Operating temperature	2
HEA 14	Internal environment: CO_2 monitoring	2
HEA 15	Internal environment: CO monitoring	2
HEA 16	Internal environment: NO_x monitoring	2
HEA 17	Internal environment: Refurbishment/renovation/redecoration	2
HEA 18	Volatile organic compounds	2
HEA 19	Control of chemicals	4
HEA 20	Acoustic conditions	4
HEA 21	Deep cleaning	4
HEA 22	Legionella management	2
HEA 23	Occupant satisfaction: Surveying	3
HEA 24	Occupant satisfaction: Feedback	4
Total credits available		**37**

Building Management HEA 12 – Fresh air rates

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

If the asset uses mechanical ventilation, have fresh air rates been measured?

Aim

To recognize and encourage a healthy internal environment through the supply of sufficient fresh air.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
3	Measured fresh air rates are in line with the current local and state building regulations
4	Measured fresh air rates are in line with published national best practice
4	Not applicable, the asset is not mechanically ventilated

Assessment criteria

1. Measurements are to be undertaken by competent persons.
2. Fresh air measurements must have been taken within 12 months of the assessment date and when major changes to the building or its occupancy have been made.
3. Where measurements have been taken in line with national best practice or building regulations, the proper procedures must have been followed. This must be demonstrated as part of the evidence. National best practice is defined by ASHRAE 62.1-2010.
4. Fresh air rates need to be measured in all relevant areas of the building in order to comply.

Evidence

1. Copy of report confirming:
    a. Measured fresh air rates
    b. That fresh air measurement has taken place in line with relevant guidance (if applicable)
    c. That fresh air supply meets or exceeds standards against which it was assessed (if applicable)

2. Confirmation of competency of person/organization undertaking air quality testing. This could be a copy of the measured results or schedule of work that includes the name(s) and qualifications of the qualified person(s).

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Relevant building area: occupied space which is a room or space within the assessed building that is likely to be occupied for 30 minutes or more by a building user. This includes public areas, such as dayrooms, exercise areas and communal areas, in shopping centers.

Building Management HEA 13 – Operating temperature

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Are temperatures managed in accordance with the design specifications of the asset?

Aim

To ensure that the temperature within the asset meets the design specifications.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. For mechanically ventilated spaces, the temperatures within the building as specified in the design for winter and summer should be managed.
2. For naturally ventilated spaces, the temperature within the building as specified in the design for winter temperatures should be managed. The temperature set for thermostats can be used to meet the requirements.

Evidence

1. Building management system readings or manual recordings of summer and winter temperature (as applicable).
2. Copy of design specification outlining summer and winter temperature (as applicable) of the asset. This information might also be found in the building operations and maintenance manual.

Additional information

-

Building Management HEA 14 – Internal environment: CO_2 monitoring

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Are internal levels of Carbon Dioxide (CO_2) monitored and controlled?

Aim

To encourage the monitoring of internal conditions to ensure a healthy indoor environment is provided.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. CO_2 levels should be measured in all relevant areas within the asset as follows:
    a. Areas of the building subject to large and unpredictable or variable occupancy patterns have CO_2 sensors specified, AND:

        In mechanically ventilated spaces: The sensor(s) are linked to the mechanical ventilation system and provide demand-controlled ventilation to the space.

        In naturally ventilated spaces: The sensors either have the ability to alert the building owner/manager when levels exceed the recommended set point, or are linked to controls with the ability to adjust the quantity of fresh air, i.e. automatic opening windows/roof vents.

    b. For all other building areas regular and planned measurements of CO_2 should be logged for a period of one week's typical occupancy for the building, in all occupied spaces, under normal operating conditions, at least 4 times a year.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of measuring equipment.
2. Specifications of the measuring equipment installed and in-use, including a brief outline of the scope of operation.
3. Copy of procedures and/or monitoring log.

Additional information

-

Building Management HEA 15 – Internal environment: CO monitoring

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Are internal levels of Carbon Monoxide (CO) monitored and controlled where sources of CO have been identified inside the asset and in proximity to external air intakes?

Aim

To encourage the monitoring of internal conditions to ensure a healthy indoor environment is provided.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
2	There are no internal sources of CO and no external air intakes present/external air intakes are not in proximity to sources of CO.

Assessment criteria

1. CO levels should be continuously monitored and controlled in the following areas:
    a. Where sources of CO are installed internally.
    b. In external air intakes that are within 65 feet of possible sources of CO.
2. An alarm should be activated when CO levels rise above a pre-set maximum for a pre-set period of time.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of measuring equipment.
2. Specifications of the measuring equipment installed and in-use, including a brief outline of the scope of operation.
3. Copy of procedures and/or monitoring log.
4. List of sources of CO that are installed in the building and/or near external air intakes.
5. Diagrams, photos or plans indicating internal sources of CO and/or sources of CO in proximity to external air intakes.
6. Where no sources of CO are installed in the building or where there are no sources of CO near external air intake:

a. Confirmation of building management team that no sources of CO have been installed

Additional information

Other information

Sources of CO emissions include all fuel burning devices, including (but not limited to):

- Traffic from nearby roads
- Traffic at loading docks
- Back-up generators
- CO emissions related to cooling, heating or providing electricity to the asset

BREEAM® USA

Building Management HEA 16 – Internal environment: NO_x monitoring

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Are internal levels of Nitrogen Oxides (NO_x) monitored and controlled where sources of NO_x have been identified inside the asset and in proximity to external air intakes?

Aim

To encourage the monitoring of internal conditions to ensure a healthy indoor environment is provided.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
2	This is not necessary for the asset

Assessment criteria

1. NO_x levels should be continuously monitored and controlled in the following areas:
    a. Where sources of NO_x are installed internally
    b. In external air intakes that are within 65 feet of possible sources of NO_x
2. An alarm should be activated when NO_x levels rise above a pre-set maximum for a pre-set period of time.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of measuring equipment.
2. Specifications of the measuring equipment installed and in-use, including a brief outline of the scope of operation.
3. Copy of procedures and/or monitoring log.
4. List of sources of NO_x that are installed in the building and/or near external air intakes.
5. Diagrams, photos or plans indicating internal sources of NO_x and/or sources of NO_x in proximity to external air intakes.
6. Where no sources of NO_x are installed in the building or where there are no sources of NO_x near external air intake:
    a. Confirmation of building management team that no sources of NO_x have been installed.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

NO_x emissions: NO_x emissions are pollutant gases produced by the combustion of fossil fuels. NO_x reacts with heat and sunlight to produce ozone that can cause serious respiratory problems. It also reacts with water to produce acid rain, which has a detrimental effect on ecosystems.

Sources of NO_x emissions include all fuel burning devices, including (but not limited to):

a. Traffic from nearby roads
b. Traffic at loading docks
c. Back-up generators
d. NO_x emissions related to cooling, heating or providing electricity to the asset

BREEAM® USA

Building Management HEA 17 – Internal environment: Refurbishment/renovation/redecoration

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Are policies/procedures in place to minimize the exposure of building occupants to chemicals and dusts released by refurbishment/renovation/redecoration works?

Aim

To reduce the risk to health associated with chemical and/or dust exposure.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Policies/formal procedures to minimize risk to building occupants from building refurbishment/renovation/redecoration must be in place. These can be:
    a. Included within risk assessments that are conducted/undertaken prior to any work taking place.
    b. Included in an internal organizational policy, where these policies/procedures can be easily identified.

Evidence

1. Copy of official documents that highlight the methods and relevant clauses that set conditions to minimize exposure to chemicals and dust during refurbishment/renovation/redecoration works.
2. Evidence of precautions taken for previous works, including relevant risk assessments assessing the conditions and risks identified (if relevant).

Additional information

-

Building Management HEA 18 – Volatile organic compounds

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is there a strategy/policy in place for minimizing the use of harmful volatile organic compound (VOC) emitting materials/substances?

Aim

To recognize and encourage a healthy internal environment through the use of internal finishes, fittings and cleaning products with reduced/no emissions of VOCs.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
2	Yes, part of a maintenance policy

Assessment criteria

1. Strategies/policies to reduce the use of harmful VOC emitting materials/substances can either be stand-alone documents or part of a wider environmental policy/strategy.
2. Strategies can be based on (a combination of):
    a. Procurement
    b. Process
    c. Risk aversion
    d. Maintenance
3. Typical materials/substances that should be covered by the policy/procedure:
    a. Paints, adhesives, and cleaning materials
    b. Electrical appliances such as printers
    c. Carpet and other flooring materials
    d. Office furniture

Evidence

1. Copy of relevant policy/procedure.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Volatile organic compounds (VOCs) are emitted by a wide array of products numbering in the thousands. Examples include: paints and lacquers, paint strippers, cleaning supplies, pesticides, building materials and furnishings, glues and adhesives, Urea-formaldehyde foam insulation (UFFI), pressed wood products (hardwood plywood wall paneling, particleboard, fiberboard) and furniture made with these pressed wood products.

Building Management HEA 19 – Control of chemicals

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is adequate extraction provided to relevant building areas to keep the concentration of pollutants from printers and specialist equipment at acceptable levels?

Aim

To maintain acceptable levels of internal air quality.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Adequate extraction (natural or mechanical)
2. to comply with this requirement is required where windows cannot be opened in the immediate vicinity, or ventilation within the building is poor.
3. Relevant building areas are areas within the building where any of the equipment mentioned in the question are installed/placed.
4. Adequate extraction for specialist equipment must be provided where this is stated within the manufacturer guidance.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of extraction fans and/or ventilation systems.
2. Floor plan indicating where equipment is placed and where extraction is in place.

Additional information

-

Building Management HEA 20 – Acoustic conditions

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Have internal acoustic conditions been monitored by a suitably qualified third party acoustician?

Aim

To ensure the acoustic performance of the building meets the appropriate best practice standards.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
4	Yes, and all recommendations have been implemented

Assessment criteria

1. A named third party acoustician is responsible for optimizing acoustic comfort and ensuring compliance with the appropriate best practice standards.
2. As a minimum, monitoring of acoustic comfort should be carried out when changes are made to the building envelope or building services that would influence acoustic conditions in the relevant spaces within the building.
3. Acoustic conditions need to be measured in all relevant spaces in the building to comply with the issue.
4. Acoustic conditions should be in line with national standards or best practice guidelines.

Evidence

1. Details of the individual responsible for the acoustic maintenance and monitoring; including qualification.
2. Records of monitoring demonstrating compliance with appropriate best practice standards.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Relevant building area: occupied space which is a room or space within the assessed building that is likely to be occupied for 30 minutes or more by a building user. This includes public areas, such as dayrooms, exercise areas and communal areas, in shopping centers.

Third party acoustician: An individual achieving the following items can be considered 'suitably qualified' for the purposes of this issue:

1. Holds a university/higher education qualification or equivalent qualification in acoustics.
2. Has a minimum of three years relevant experience (within the last five years). Such experience must clearly demonstrate a practical understanding of factors affecting acoustics in relation to construction and the built environment, including, acting in an advisory capacity to provide recommendations for suitable acoustic performance levels and mitigation measures.

BREEAM® USA

Building Management HEA 21 – Deep cleaning

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is there a strategy in place to carry out deep cleaning of soft furnishing and/or carpets, at an appropriate frequency?

Aim

To recognize and encourage a policy of regular cleaning of soft furnishing and/or carpets to reduce the risk to health associated with poor building cleanliness.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Yes, deep cleaning of soft furnishings and/or carpets carried out once every three years
2	Yes, deep cleaning of soft furnishings and/or carpets carried out more than once every three years
4	Yes, deep cleaning of soft furnishings and/or carpets carried out at least annually
4	There are no soft furnishings and/or carpets within the asset

Assessment criteria

1. Deep cleaning would typically require the use of specialist/steam cleaning apparatus.
2. Regular daily cleaning of soft furnishings and/or carpets is not considered 'deep cleaning'.
3. The use of harmful chemicals should be minimized to reduce the effects of deep cleaning on the indoor environment.

Evidence

1. A copy of the maintenance/cleaning policy highlighting the relevant cleaning clauses.
2. Records of deep cleaning carried out that confirm the policy has been followed.

Additional information

-

Building Management HEA 22 – Legionella management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Are all systems that are installed to reduce the risk of Legionella contamination adequately maintained?

Aim

To ensure Legionella contamination systems are maintained to avoid the risk of Legionella contamination.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Regular inspection and maintenance of all systems, by a competent third party contractor, in accordance with national standard
2	No systems have been installed for the control of Legionella
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The national standard is ASHRAE 188-2015. Regular inspections and maintenance of the systems are required to be done in line with this standard.
2. There need to be fully documented operation and inspection maintenance manuals for each system. These manuals include (but are not limited to):
    a. Listing of all equipment that is installed
    b. Maintenance schedules for the installed equipment stating (at a minimum) the time intervals for:
        i. Inspection (no more than 1 year)
        ii. Overhaul
        iii. Cleaning

Evidence

1. Copy of list of systems that are installed to reduce the risk of Legionella contamination.
2. Copy of legionella inspection log and results.
3. If "No systems have been installed for the control of legionella" is selected the Assessor must ensure that a copy of the report that outlines that no Legionella control systems are deemed necessary should be

provided. The report as specified in Asset Performance HEA 05 – Minimizing Legionella contamination will suffice.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Competent person: a person with sufficient knowledge, training and experience of the building water system design and water management as it relates to legionellosis to be able to describe the water systems, evaluate where hazardous conditions may occur, determine where control measures can and must be applied and maintained to stay within established control limits and establish procedures to monitor whether control measures are operating within established limits and if not, take corrective action.-

BREEAM® USA

Building Management HEA 23 – Occupant satisfaction: Surveying

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

Question

Are procedures in place for the collection and recording of occupant satisfaction in regards to the asset's internal environment?

Aim

To ensure that building occupant satisfaction with the building is regularly monitored and reviewed so improvements can be made.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don’t know
0	No
2	Yes
3	Yes, third party system used as a basis for the survey

Assessment criteria

1. Regular collection and recording of building occupant satisfaction (using an established procedure) should be undertaken at least once every three years and additionally when major changes in facility planning, building services etc. have been undertaken.
2. The survey process should be designed to cover, as a minimum:
    a. Internal environmental conditions
    b. Internal environmental controls
    c. Internal fit-out and contents
    d. Common areas and facilities in the building
3. The occupant satisfaction feedback process can be carried by an in-house team provided they can demonstrate that they have the necessary research skills and expertise in social research. An independent consultant may be more acceptable to the respondents in terms of maintaining the confidentiality of their responses.
4. Qualitative methods, such as the use of structured interviews and/or focus groups may also comply, provided they involve a cross section of building occupants and cover the range of issues set out above.
5. To avoid de-motivation of respondents it is important in that the results and subsequent actions are communicated to the participants either in a report or a presentation. Where occupant satisfaction

surveys have taken place, the Assessor should check that contents of the survey and the results have been communicated to all occupants.

Evidence

1. A copy of the building occupant's satisfaction feedback forms.
2. Copy of procedure and survey process.

Additional information

-

Building Management HEA 24 – Occupant satisfaction: Feedback

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are procedures in place to address feedback and issues as highlighted in the occupant satisfaction survey process?

Aim

To recognize and encourage procedures to act on information gathered through occupant satisfaction surveys so that the building performance can be optimized.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
4	Yes, targets are set and signed off at senior manager or director level

Assessment criteria

1. Procedures to act on feedback from occupant satisfaction surveys should be undertaken at least once every three years and when major changes in facility planning, building services etc. have been made.
2. Targets should be set for all topics for which building occupants have highlighted issues.
3. All targets and procedures that are in place as a result of the occupant satisfaction survey should be accessible to all building occupants.
4. Process on targets and procedures should be reviewed annually.

Evidence

1. Copy of reviews/targets that have been set based on occupant survey outcomes.
2. Records of how information on target setting and procedure development has been communicated with building occupants. This could either be through hard copy or soft copy.

Additional information

-

Energy

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
ENE 31	Energy consumption start date	Up to 40 credits are available. Credits are calculated within the Energy Model
ENE 32	Energy consumption end date	
ENE 33	Electricity consumption	
ENE 34	Natural gas consumption	
ENE 35	LPG consumption	
ENE 36	Gas oil consumption	
ENE 37	Solid fossil fuel consumption	
ENE 38	Biodiesel consumption	
ENE 39	Biogas consumption	
ENE 40	Wood/Waste wood consumption	
ENE 41	District heating consumption	
ENE 42	Carbon intensity district heating	
ENE 43	District cooling consumption	
ENE 44	Carbon intensity district cooling	
ENE 45	Electricity exported	
ENE 46	Non-standard energy uses	
ENE 47, 50, 53, 56 & 59	Non-standard energy use	
ENE 48, 51, 54, 57 & 60	Non-standard energy consumption	
ENE 49, 52, 55, 58 & 61	Non-standard energy consumption floor area	
ENE 62	Energy consumption monitoring	4
ENE 63	Energy consumption data use	4
ENE 64	Sub-metering: Main energy sources	4
ENE 65	Sub-metering: Other energy sources	4
ENE 66	Sub-metering: Tenanted areas	4
Total credits available		**60**

Operational Energy Calculator Guidance

Introduction

This section has been produced to give BREEAM USA In-Use Assessors further guidance on the workings of the operational energy calculator so it is clear how any reductions in operational energy consumption will be reflected in the calculation of the operational energy rating.

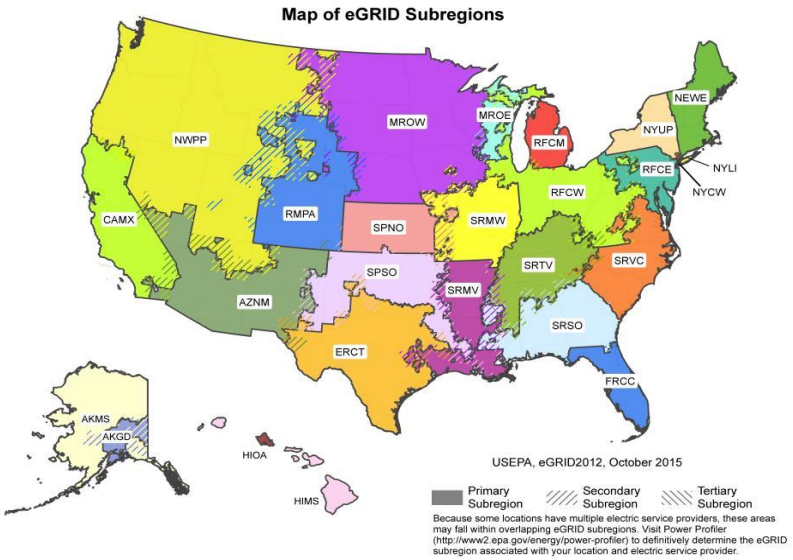
Overview

In order to calculate the operational energy rating, the carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions resulting from actual building energy consumption are compared to the equivalent CO_2 emissions for a reference building. There are three main parts to the methodology: establishing the reference benchmark, establishing the actual building CO_2 emissions, and comparing the reference benchmark with the actual CO_2 emissions to generate a rating.

Establishing reference benchmark

The reference benchmark is set according to the main activity type in the building being assessed. To reflect that there may be more than one activity carried out in any given building e.g. an office block with a restaurant area, it is possible to select up to five different asset types for a single assessment. Where more than one asset type is selected, the reference benchmark is calculated on an area-weighted basis. This reference benchmark is adjusted to take account of local climate using the same degree-day calculation methodology used for the asset model. In order to recognize the lower energy consumption of naturally ventilated properties, the reference benchmarks are based on a mix of both air-conditioned and naturally ventilated premises.

The reference building energy consumption is converted to CO_2 by multiplying the electrical and non-electrical energy benchmarks by appropriate carbon emission factors. The carbon emissions factor for all non-electrical energy consumption is based on a natural gas / fuel oil mix and is fixed. The Emissions & Generation Resource Integrated Database (eGRID) [1] provides all the carbon emissions factors for electrical energy consumption for US assets. The asset is mapped to the relevant electricity sub region using the ZIP code provided when the asset was registered. These



[1] EPA, 2014. Emissions & Generation Resource Integrated Database (eGRID) 2012. Washington, DC: US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)

factors will only change when the BREEAM USA In-Use program is updated to provide a consistent basis for comparison.

More information can be found on their website: https://www.epa.gov/energy/egrid

Establishing actual energy consumption

The utility-supplied metered energy consumption is used as the starting point for establishing the applicable energy consumption for the actual building. It is possible to make two 'corrections' to the metered energy consumption data:

- Energy consumption associated with non-standard energy uses that would not be considered typical for the type of building being assessed can be subtracted where separately metered.
- Any electricity exported from the site can be subtracted where there is a separate export meter.

A final correction is then made to account for consumption data based on any reporting period that is not 365 days. Users are able to manually enter metered energy consumption for a number of different fuel types including: grid supplied electricity, natural gas, propane, gas oil, solid fossil fuels, biodiesel, biogas, wood, district heating and district cooling. Energy generated from on-site renewables and consumed by the asset is not included in the calculation.

Assets using ENERGY STAR Portfolio Manager® to record and monitor their energy consumption can run reports from the tool to obtain the data needed to answer the energy consumption questions where the tool is being used to track that energy usage. ENERGY STAR Portfolio Manager® allows the energy consumption for all fuel types to be entered in a multitude of measurement units (depending on the fuel) and then translates this to standard units. Automated data exchange with ENERGY STAR Portfolio Manager® is not currently supported.

Once the energy consumption for each fuel type has been entered, the tool calculates the associated CO_2 emissions for the actual building by multiplying the consumption data by the relevant carbon emission factors for each fuel type. As for the reference baseline, the carbon emission factor for electricity varies according to the location of the assessment, but the emission factors for non-electrical consumption are fixed. The only exception to this is for district heating and cooling systems where it is possible to enter the actual emissions factor for the system where known.

Establishing final score

The operational energy rating is then calculated by comparing the actual CO_2 emissions to the reference CO_2 emissions using a sliding scale with maximum credits being awarded for a zero carbon building, and zero credits awarded where the actual emissions are more than twice the reference emissions.

Building Management ENE 31 – Energy consumption start date

Number of credits available	Minimum standards	Mandatory question
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No	Yes

Question

Please enter the start date of the annual reporting period for consumption data applicable to questions Building Management ENE 33 – Electricity consumption to Building Management ENE 45 – Electricity exported.

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: MM/DD/YYYY
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Assessors must ensure that the reporting period is between 11 – 13 months.

Evidence

1. Copies of energy bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.

Additional information

Other information

The intention is that the user enters energy consumption data based on a 365-day period; however, it is possible to enter data for any reporting period between 11 and 13 months. Any reporting period outside of the 11- to 13-month range would be invalid and result in zero credits being scored.

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Building Management ENE 32 – Energy consumption end date

Number of credits available	Minimum standards	Mandatory question
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No	Yes

Question

Please enter the end date of the annual reporting period for consumption data applicable to questions Building Management ENE 33 – Electricity consumption to Building Management ENE 45 – Electricity exported.

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide date as: MM/DD/YYYY
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Assessors must ensure that the reporting period is between 11 – 13 months.

Evidence

1. Copies of energy bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period.

Additional information

Other information

The intention is that the user enters energy consumption data based on a 365-day period; however, it is possible to enter data for any reporting period between 11 and 13 months. Any reporting period outside of the 11- to 13-month range would be invalid and result in zero credits being scored.

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Building Management ENE 33 – Electricity consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

How much utility supplied electricity was consumed by the asset on annual basis (kWh), as metered in the reporting period?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: kWh/year
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as Gross Internal Area under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of Gross Internal Area Asset Dimensions.
2. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.

Evidence

1. Copies of energy bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period. This evidence is required for **all** sources for this energy type that contribute to the total consumption. Monthly usage breakdowns are not required.

Additional information

-

Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

How much natural gas is consumed by the asset on an annual basis (therms), as metered in the reporting period?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: therms/year
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as Gross Internal Area under: Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of Gross Internal Area. Asset Dimensions

2. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.

Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period. This evidence is required for **all** sources for this energy type that contribute to the total consumption. Monthly usage breakdowns are not required.

Additional information

Other information

Please note: all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE Global Limited for guidance on how to account for this.

Building Management ENE 35 – Propane consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

How much propane is consumed by the asset on an annual basis (kBtu), as metered in the reporting period?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: kBtu/year
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as Gross Internal Area under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of Gross Internal Area.
2. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
3. Calculating propane usage can be achieved via:
    a. Metering
    b. Calculations based on inventory data (the number of canisters used on site) during the reporting period (where their specifications are known)

Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period. This evidence is required for **all** sources for this energy type that contribute to the total consumption. Monthly usage breakdowns are not required.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.

Additional information

Other information

Please note: all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE Global Limited for guidance on how to account for this.

Building Management ENE 36 – Gas oil consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

How much gas oil (light fuel oil/diesel) is consumed by the asset on an annual basis (kBtu), as metered in the reporting period?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: kBtu/year
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as Gross Internal Area under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of Gross Internal Area.
2. This figure regards fuel that has been used directly within the asset NOT for vehicles or other appliances operating on site, unless this is specified within the scope.
3. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
4. Recording fuel usage can be achieved through:
    a. Metering of equipment
    b. Estimates of system efficiency and running times
    c. Calculations based on inventory data

Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period. This evidence is required for **all** sources for this energy type that contribute to the total consumption. Monthly usage breakdowns are not required.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.
3. Photographic evidence of sub meters (if relevant).

Additional information

Other information

Please note: all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE Global Limited for guidance on how to account for this.

Building Management ENE 37 – Solid fossil fuel consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

How much solid fossil fuel is consumed by the asset supplied on an annual basis (kBtu), as metered in the reporting period?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: kBtu/year
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as Gross Internal Area under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of Gross Internal Area.
2. Solid fossil fuel refers to the burning of solid material for the purposes of creating heat, such as coal.
3. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
4. Calculating the amount of solid fuel usage can be achieved through:
    a. Sub-metering of equipment which uses solid fuel
    b. Invoices for materials purchased during the reporting period and calculations based on the calorific content of the material.

Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period. This evidence is required for **all** sources for this energy type that contribute to the total consumption. Monthly usage breakdowns are not required.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.
3. Photographic evidence of sub-meters (if relevant)

Additional information

-

Building Management ENE 38 – Biodiesel consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

How much biodiesel is consumed by the asset on an annual basis (kBtu), as metered in the reporting period?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: kBtu/year
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as Gross Internal Area under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of Gross Internal Area.
2. Cooking oil can only be used when it has been appropriately refined to a standard that is suitable for fuel usage.
3. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
4. Calculating biodiesel usage can be achieved through:
    a. Sub-metering of equipment which uses this fuel
    b. Invoices for biodiesel materials purchased during the reporting period and calculations based on the calorific content of the material.

Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period. This evidence is required for **all** sources for this energy type that contribute to the total consumption. Monthly usage breakdowns are not required.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.
3. Photographic evidence of sub-meters (if relevant)

Additional information

Other information

Please note: all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE Global Limited for guidance on how to account for this.

Building Management ENE 39 – Biogas consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

How much biogas is consumed by the asset on an annual basis (kWh), as metered in the reporting period?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: kWh/year
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as Gross Internal Area under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of Gross Internal Area.
2. Biogas can be used from offsite suppliers or as a result of on-site generation, following a process such as anaerobic digestion etc.
3. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
4. Calculating biogas usage can be achieved through:
    a. Sub-metering of equipment which uses this fuel
    b. Invoices for gas imported during the reporting period

Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period. This evidence is required for **all** sources for this energy type that contribute to the total consumption. Monthly usage breakdowns are not required.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.
3. Photographic evidence of sub-meters (if relevant).

Additional information

-

Building Management ENE 40 – Wood/Waste wood consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

How much wood/waste wood is consumed by the asset on an annual basis (kBtu), as metered in the reporting period?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: kBtu/year
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as Gross Internal Area under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of Gross Internal Area.
2. Calculating the amount of wood/wood waste usage can be achieved through invoices for materials purchased during the reporting period and calculations based on the calorific content of the material.
3. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.

Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period. This evidence is required for **all** sources for this energy type that contribute to the total consumption. Monthly usage breakdowns are not required.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.

Additional information

Other information

Please note: all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE Global Limited for guidance on how to account for this.

Building Management ENE 41 – District heating consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

How much district heating energy is consumed by the asset on an annual basis (kBtu), as metered in the reporting period?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: kBtu/year
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as Gross Internal Area under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of Gross Internal Area.
2. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
3. Evidence provided will illustrate that an accurate calculation of district heating energy usage has been provided. This could include, but is not limited to:
    a. Relevant metering of equipment
    b. Building energy management systems
    c. Calculation via energy bills for fuel types if these fuel types are only used for district heating etc.

Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period. This evidence is required for **all** sources for this energy type that contribute to the total consumption. Monthly usage breakdowns are not required.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.
3. Photographic evidence of sub-meters (if relevant).

Additional information

Relevant definitions

District heating refers to heating which is delivered via a central source to different parts of the building, for example, a system that runs from central boilers.

Other information

Please note: all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE Global Limited for guidance on how to account for this.

Building Management ENE 42 – Carbon intensity district heating

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

If known, what is the carbon intensity of the district heating system in $kgCO_2/MBtu$?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: $kgCO_2/MBtu$
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. The carbon intensity of the district heating system would be sourced from the supplier of this system.

Evidence

1. Relevant literature/records/data or other information from the district heating supplier stating the carbon intensity of the system.

Additional information

-

Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

How much district cooling energy consumption is consumed by the asset on an annual basis (kBtu), as metered in the reporting period?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: kBtu/year
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Please ensure that all consumption data relates specifically to the area of the asset that is being assessed. This is the area that has been filled in as Gross Internal Area under Asset Dimensions. This also includes further guidance on the definition of Gross Internal Area.
2. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.
3. Accurate calculation of district cooling energy usage could come from:
    a. Relevant metering of equipment
    b. Building energy management systems

Evidence

1. Copies of utility bills or verified meter readings for the beginning and end of the reporting period. This evidence is required for **all** sources for this energy type that contribute to the total consumption. Monthly usage breakdowns are not required.
2. Calculations based on inventory data.
3. Photographic evidence of sub-meters (if relevant).

Additional information

Other information

Please note: all fuel consumption must be entered for Building Management ENE 34 – Natural gas consumption through to Building Management ENE 43 – District cooling consumption. If the asset uses a fuel type that is not listed, please contact BRE Global Limited for guidance on how to account for this.

Building Management ENE 44 – Carbon intensity district cooling

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

If known, what is the carbon intensity of the district cooling system in $kgCO_2/MBtu$?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: $kgCO_2/MBtu$
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. The carbon intensity of the district cooling system would be sourced from the supplier of this system.

Evidence

1. Relevant literature/records/data or other information from the district cooling supplier stating the carbon intensity of the system.

Additional information

-

Building Management ENE 45 – Electricity exported

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the quantity of electricity exported off site on an annual basis (kWh), as metered in the reporting period?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: kWh/year
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. The quantity of electricity exported off site would only need to be considered where there are separate meters for the import and export of electricity.
    a. Where these meters are combined, the contribution of electricity generated on site and exported off site will already be factored in to the main electricity consumption figure.
2. Where a separate meter for import and export of electricity are installed on-site:
    a. Only the electricity that is exported via the export meter should be taken in to account
3. Assessors must confirm that the reporting period is aligned with the start and end date of the utility bills.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of relevant export meter
2. Line diagram outlining the connection of the on-site electricity generators to the export meters.
3. Building Energy Management System (BEMS) data.
4. Copies of verified data for the period specified in Building Management ENE 31 – Energy consumption start date and Building Management ENE 32 – Energy consumption end date.

Additional information

-

Building Management ENE 46 – Non-standard energy uses

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

Select the number of non-standard energy uses that are sub-metered within the asset (0-5 types).

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
-	Question not answered
-	0
-	1
-	2
-	3
-	4
-	5

Assessment criteria

1. For the purposes of a BREEAM USA In-Use assessment, non-standard energy uses are defined as:
    a. Regional server room: Energy used in a server room that services multiple satellite offices/servers.
    b. Trading floor: Energy used in a room where traders are gathered to operate on financial markets
    c. Bakery oven: Energy used in a commercial sized oven used to bake foods.
    d. Sports flood lighting: Energy used by broad-beamed, high intensity artificial lights (often used outside)
    e. Furnace or forming process
        i. Energy used in a furnace: an industrial devise used for many things, such as extracting metals or as heat source in chemical plants.
        ii. Energy used in forming process: a manufacturing process that makes uses of suitable stresses to cause deformation of materials to produce required shapes.
    f. Blast chilling or freezing: Energy used for cooling materials (often food) quickly to low temperatures.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of sub-meters.
2. Building plans illustrating the location of sub-meters.

Additional information

-

BREEAM® USA

Building Management ENE 47, 50, 53, 56 & 59 – Non-standard energy use

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

Select the non-standard sub-metered energy use.

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
-	Question not answered
-	Regional server room
-	Trading floor
-	Bakery oven
-	Sports floodlighting
-	Furnace or forming process
-	Blast chilling or freezing

Assessment criteria

1. Non-standard energy uses are defined as:
    a. Regional server room: Energy used in a server room that services multiple satellite offices/servers
    b. Trading floor: Energy used in a room where traders are gathered to operate on financial markets
    c. Bakery oven: Energy used in a commercial sized oven used to bake foods.
    d. Sports floodlighting: Energy used by broad-beamed, high intensity artificial lights (often used outside)
    e. Furnace or forming process:
        i. Energy used in a furnace: an industrial devise used for many things, such as extracting metals or as heat source in chemical plants.
        ii. Energy used in forming process: a manufacturing process that makes uses of suitable stresses to cause deformation of materials to produce required shapes.
    f. Blast chilling or freezing: Energy used for cooling materials (often food) quickly to low temperatures.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of non-standard energy use.
2. Written explanation what non-standard energy use is used.

Additional information

-

Building Management ENE 48, 51, 54, 57 & 60 – Non-standard energy consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the energy usage of the non-standard sub-metered energy use?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: kWh/year
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. Non-standard energy uses should be sub-metered to confirm the energy use associated with the non-standard energy use and area.
2. Non-standard energy uses are defined as:
    a. Regional server room: Energy used in a server room that services multiple satellite offices/servers
    b. Trading floor: Energy used in a room where traders are gathered to operate on financial markets
    c. Bakery oven: Energy used in a commercial sized oven used to bake foods.
    d. Sports floodlighting: Energy used by broad-beamed, high intensity artificial lights (often used outside)
    e. Furnace or forming process:
        i. Energy used in a furnace: an industrial devise used for many things, such as extracting metals or as heat source in chemical plants.
        ii. Energy used in forming process: a manufacturing process that makes uses of suitable stresses to cause deformation of materials to produce required shapes.
    f. Blast chilling or freezing: Energy used for cooling materials (often food) quickly to low temperatures.

Evidence

1. Copies of verified meter data for the 12-month period specified.
2. Photographic evidence of the installation of sub-meters for the non-standard energy use.

Additional information

-

Building Management ENE 49, 52, 55, 58 & 61 – Non-standard energy consumption floor area

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
Credits are calculated within the Energy Model	No

Question

What is the floor area associated with the non-standard energy use (ft^2)?

Aim

This data is required to generate the operational energy rating.

Available credits

Credits	Provide as: ft^2
N/A	

Assessment criteria

1. The floor area that is associated with the non-standard energy use should be measured. The floor area is calculated as follows for the non-standard energy uses:
    a. Regional server room: The area/room that houses the regional server equipment.
    b. Trading floor: The area/floor that comprises the trading.
    c. Bakery oven: The area comprising the bakery oven and the associated process.
    d. Sports floodlighting: The area/grounds that are lit by the floodlights.
    e. Furnace or forming process:
        i. The area comprising the furnace and the associated process.
        ii. The area comprising the forming process.
    f. Blast chilling or freezing: The area comprising the blast chiller/freezer and associated process.

Evidence

1. Building plans illustrating floor area related to the non-standard energy use.

Additional information

-

Building Management ENE 62 – Energy consumption monitoring

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is energy consumption monitored and is this data accessible?

Aim

To encourage the monitoring of energy consumption that in turn will allow building managers to set improvement targets.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Consumption data can be acquired from:
    a. Meters (manually or automatically read)
    b. Delivery and stock-level figures
2. In order to illustrate that this data is accessible, the building management team (or whoever is responsible for energy measurement) must present data held in a single location, such as a spreadsheet, clearly arranged folders, building energy management systems or other relevant storage systems. An example would be ENERGY STAR Portfolio Manager®, an online tool developed and managed by the US EPA, used to measure and track energy and water consumption, as well as greenhouse gas emissions.

Evidence

1. Records of energy consumption data as part of a spread sheet; calculated from metering data or energy bills.

Additional information

Assets using ENERGY STAR Portfolio Manager® to record and monitor their energy consumption can provide a spreadsheet download of the meter entries within ENERGY STAR as evidence once the Assessor has verified the data is held in the asset's building profile. -

Building Management ENE 63 – Energy consumption data use

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

How is collected energy consumption data used?

Aim

To facilitate the structured and systematic provision of reporting on energy consumption to encourage building users to understand and set efficiency improvement targets.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
1	Filed away
2	Compared against asset targets
3	Compared against asset targets and reported on internally
4	All of the above and in addition reported to management
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Building energy consumption should be monitored, targeted and reported to the appropriate level within the building occupant's organizational structure.
2. There are dedicated energy management/reduction targets endorsed at senior level. The targets must address/declare that:
    a. The organization is dedicated to reducing energy consumed as a result of its operation/s.
    b. The organization will work with occupiers/suppliers to address impacts of consumed energy and strategies to reduce consumption (if relevant).

Evidence

1. Evidence of company utilizing data in ways identified, such as:
    a. Corporate Social Responsibility reports detailing how data is targeted and improved.
    b. Evidence of improvement target setting and ways these are implemented.

Additional information

-

Building Management ENE 64 – Sub-metering: Main energy sources

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

How many of the following main energy uses are covered by separate sub-meters:

- Heating
- Cooling
- Interior Lighting
- Ventilation

Aim

To facilitate the structured and systematic provision of reporting on energy consumption to ensure building users understand and set targets to operate the building more efficiently.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No sub-meters provided
1	1 of the main energy uses
2	2 of the main energy uses
3	3 of the main energy uses
4	4 of the main energy uses

Assessment criteria

1. Only main energy uses are covered in this issue. Other energy uses are covered in Building Management ENE 65 – Sub-metering: Other energy sources.
2. Assessors should verify that the sub-meters were operational during the reporting period.

Evidence

1. Copies of verified meter data for the first and last date of the 12-month reporting period.
2. Line diagram indicating sub-meters and the related energy uses.

Additional information

-

Building Management ENE 65 – Sub-metering: Other energy sources

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Which of the following energy uses are covered by separate sub-meters:

- Exterior lighting
- All means of vertical transportation (e.g. elevators and escalators)
- Display and aesthetical effects lighting
- Ventilation, heating and cooling in transitional spaces (e.g. air curtains and revolving doors)
- Small power/plug load.

Aim

To encourage separate metering of appliances within the asset in order to attain a better granularity of data which can be used to target improvements.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	None of the listed energy uses
1	1 of the listed energy uses
2	2 of the listed energy uses
3	3 of the listed energy uses
4	4 or more of the listed energy uses

Assessment criteria

1. Only energy uses that are sub-metered should be selected.
2. Sub-metering for main energy uses is covered by Building Management ENE 64 – Sub-metering: Main energy sources.

Evidence

1. Copies or verified meter data for the first and last date of the 12-month period specified.
2. Line diagram indicating sub-meters and the related energy uses.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Small power: plug-in equipment/appliances connected through power points.

Building Management ENE 66 – Sub-metering: Tenanted areas

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are heating and cooling sub-meters provided for tenanted areas?

Aim

To facilitate the structured and systematic provision of reporting on energy consumption to ensure building users understand and set targets to operate the asset more efficiently.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes the asset is partially sub-metered for tenanted areas
4	Yes the asset is fully sub-metered or occupied by a single tenant

Assessment criteria

1. It is noted that lighting and small power can be difficult to separate cost effectively for metering purposes. Therefore, it is acceptable for lighting and small power to be combined per floor level.
2. For naturally ventilated assets: only heating sub-meters must be provided.

Evidence

1. Copies of bills or verified data for the 12-month period specified.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Small power: plug-in equipment/appliances connected through power points.

Transport

The Transport category is not assessed within Part 2 of the BREEAM USA In-Use assessment.

Water

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
WAT 11	Annual consumption	4
WAT 12	Water consumption: Monitoring and reporting	8
WAT 13	Drinking water provision	2
WAT 14	Refurbishment policy: Water efficiency	2
WAT 15	Water system maintenance strategy	4
WAT 16	Water recycling	4
WAT 17	Water extraction	2
Total credits available		**26**

Building Management WAT 11 – Annual consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What is the annual water consumption? Enter volume in thousand gallons (kgal).

Aim

To ensure management are aware of annual consumption from potable and non-potable water sources.

Available credits

Credits	Enter volume in kgal
4	

Assessment criteria

1. Annual water consumption should include the sum of all water drawn into the boundaries of the reporting organization for this asset. This includes water consumption from potable and non-potable water sources (including groundwater, rainwater and utility water supply), for any use over the course of the reporting period.

Evidence

1. Meter readings.
2. Utility bills.
3. Spreadsheet data derived from bills or meter readings.

Additional information

-

Building Management WAT 12 – Water consumption: Monitoring and reporting

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
8	No

Question

Is there a strategy in place to use water monitoring data to minimize water consumption that includes target setting and reporting mechanisms?

Aim

To use information gained from monitoring to help inform the water strategy and reduce overall consumption.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Strategy is in place, no other actions are taken
2	Strategy is in place and water targets are filed away
4	Strategy is in place that compares water consumption against asset targets
6	Strategy is in place that compares water consumption against asset targets and report on these internally
8	Strategy is in place that compares water consumption against asset targets and report on these internally and to management

Assessment criteria

1. The strategy should outline how monitoring data will be used to help minimize water consumption. This could for example be through:
    a. Identifying areas of unexpectedly high water consumption that could indicate system leaks.
    b. Identifying the areas with high water consumption that should be targeted for installing water efficiency measures.
    c. Making monitoring data available to asset users with a view to modifying user behavior.

Evidence

1. A copy of the strategy/policy.
2. Records of water consumption analysis; Spreadsheet, summary report etc.

3. Copies of how water consumption and analysis have been reported internally such as:
    a. Internal memos
    b. Newsletters or tenant/staff presentations
    c. Posters
    d. Emails
4. Copies if how water consumption and analysis have been reported to management such as:
    a. Summary
    b. Executive report
    c. Emails

Additional information

-

Building Management WAT 13 – Drinking water provision

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is the provision of drinking water regularly reviewed to ensure that it meets users' needs?

Aim

To recognize and encourage the provision of sufficient water access points.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don’t know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Drinking water access points need to be:
    a. Easily accessible to all users; at least one access point per floor level, in a hygienic location and condition
    c. Appropriate in number and placement to serve all building users; as determined by the Assessor’s best judgment
2. Assessors should ensure that the number of occupants is regularly reviewed and that access to drinking points is reflective of any changes in occupants.
3. Drinking water access points should at least be reviewed after:
    a. Refurbishments or alterations have been made to the building
    b. Significant changes in the number of occupants are recorded

Evidence

1. Documentation specifying number of occupants in the building and per floor and the number of access points to drinking water, i.e. building plans specifying access points and number of occupants.
2. Documentation outlining review schedules, major changes to the building or changes in numbers of occupants.

Additional information

-

Building Management WAT 14 – Refurbishment policy: Water efficiency

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is there a policy in place to replace water appliances and fittings with low water use equivalents during refurbishments?

Aim

Promoting the reduction of water consumption through installation of water-efficient fixtures and fittings.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. As a minimum, the policy should include:
    a. A replacement program.
    b. A schedule of approved replacement appliances. The appliances listed in this schedule should be easy to identify to be of low water use by relevant labeling, such as the U.S. EPA's WaterSense®.
2. If all water appliances and fittings have already been replaced with low water use equivalents, a policy should still be in place to ensure a continuation of good practice.

Evidence

1. Copy of the policy document.

Additional information

-

Building Management WAT 15 – Water system maintenance strategy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Does the organization have a strategy for maintaining water systems?

Aim

To ensure that reliable water supplies are maintained and any wastage through leaks is minimized.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
4	Yes, it is a proactive maintenance policy

Assessment criteria

1. A proactive maintenance policy is a defined maintenance strategy to ensure that the reliability of the installed fittings and water systems is increased. These maintenance policies typically consist of two parts:
    a. Preventive maintenance: maintenance, measurements, tests, parts replacement, etc. to prevent faults from occurring.
    b. Predictive maintenance: maintenance techniques that are designed to help determine the condition of installed equipment in order to predict when maintenance should occur.

Evidence

1. Copy of relevant section of maintenance strategy.
2. Copy of maintenance logs.

Additional information

-

Building Management WAT 16 – Water recycling

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What percentage of total water consumption is from alternative supplies?

Aim

To encourage the use of alternative water supplies to reduce the demand for utility supplied fresh water.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	0%
1	≥1 to <25%
2	≥25 to <50%
3	≥50 to <75%
4	≥75%

Assessment criteria

1. Alternative water supplies include water that is treated prior to reuse and water that is not treated prior to reuse.
2. Both rainwater and greywater can be considered as alternative water supplies.
3. Other water sources can be used to meet the aim of the credit as long as the alternative water supply is used to reduce demand of utility-supplied fresh water for unregulated water uses.

Evidence

Either:

1. Calculations (based on metered data for both utility an alternative supplies) to demonstrate the percentage of water consumption obtained from alternative supplies, **OR**
2. Meter readings for both utility and alternative supplies to allow the Assessor to calculate percentage of water from alternative supplies.

Additional information

-

Building Management WAT 17 – Water extraction

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is non-utility water extraction metered and monitored to avoid over-extraction?

Aim

To avoid over-extraction of the water table.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	No water is extracted
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. It is essential that reliable metering provides a record of how much water is taken, metering will allow, and will thus illustrate:
    a. Catchments are accurately balanced against overall requirements, to maintain a healthy water environment
    b. Spare resources are allocated to new/future abstractions
    c. Equitable payments can be set
    d. Assurance that water permit conditions are being adhered to

Evidence

1. Evidence of monitoring data
2. If possible, copy of policy which stipulates monitoring is to take place

Additional information

-

Materials

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
MAT 08	Condition survey	4
MAT 09	Sustainable procurement policy	2
MAT 10	Sustainable procurement initiatives	4
MAT 11	Fire risk assessment	2
MAT 12	Fire risk management	2
MAT 13	Emergency plan	4
MAT 14	Natural hazard management	2
Total credits available		**20**

BREEAM® USA

Building Management MAT 08 – Condition survey

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Where a condition survey has been carried out, who was the responsible party for completing it?

Aim

To ensure that a competent party carries out a condition survey.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No condition survey has been carried out
1	Carried out by the building management personnel
2	Carried out by building management following third party approved procedures
3	Carried out by an independent third party
4	Carried out by an independent chartered building surveyor
4	The asset is less than 5 years old and no condition survey has been carried out
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The responsible party/person that carries out the condition surveys must be suitably trained and experienced. Competent persons include:
    a. Facilities management/building management staff
    b. Civil engineers or other relevant engineering disciplines
    c. Architects
    d. Chartered surveyors
    a. Members of institutions whom have undergone appropriate due diligence or training to conduct condition surveys

Evidence

1. Copy of the section/page of the condition survey stating the name and organization (including third party certification where available) of the party that carried out the condition survey.

2. Information regarding relevant qualifications and experience of the person who has undertaken the condition survey.
3. Assets that are less than 5 years old will require appropriate public records of property registration to demonstrate the building's age.

Additional information

Chartered surveyor (CS) is the term for a Professional Member or Fellow of the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors (RICS). Though it started in the United Kingdom, the RICS is an international professional body that accredits professionals within the land, property and construction sectors across the world. In order to become a Chartered Surveyor, trainees must undertake a degree accredited by the RICS and pass the Assessment of Professional Competence. Members of all status can be found through a search of the RICS website: http://www.rics.org/us/find-a-member/

For more information please go to the RICS Americas website: http://www.rics.org/us/about-rics/where-we-are/americas/about-rics-americas/ -

BREEAM® USA

Building Management MAT 09 – Sustainable procurement policy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is an environmental/sustainable procurement policy in place with regards to the maintenance, refurbishment and operation of the building that covers materials, products, and services?

Aim

To recognize and encourage the implementation of formal environmental policies that address, and aim to reduce organizational purchases of materials, products and services with a high environmental impact.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. An environmental purchasing policy should cover consumables and replacement equipment. The policy should have also been endorsed at senior management level.
2. The asset owner demonstrates (i.e. through examples) how the policy is implemented, either through general organizational operation, or project related initiatives and management strategies.
3. All timber or timber-based products (such as paper and paper products) that are procured should be 'Legally harvested and Legally traded timber' as outlined in the additional information section.

Evidence

1. A copy of the environmental/sustainable purchasing policy.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Legally harvested timber: timber that has been harvested in accordance with the applicable legislation in the country of harvest.

Legally traded timber: timber that is legally traded means timber or products derived from timber were:

1. Exported in compliance with exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.

2. Imported in compliance with importing country laws governing the import of timber and timber products, including payment of any import taxes, duties, or levies or not in contravention of exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.
3. Traded in compliance with legislation related to the Convention on International Trade In Endangered Species (CITES) where applicable.

BREEAM® USA

Building Management MAT 10 – Sustainable procurement initiatives

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What initiatives are included in the scope of the environmental/sustainable procurement policy?

Aim

To recognize and encourage measures which ensure that environmental impacts associated with the management of the building are minimized by setting environmental standards for procurement of goods and services.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No policy in place
1	The asset owner works with the supply chain to help reduce environmental impact of procurements
1	Environmental impacts of materials are taken into account with targets to reduce negative impacts
1	CO_2 emissions arising from transport of materials are taken into account and targets set to reduce CO_2 emissions
1	The asset owner has targets to reduce the consumption of hazardous materials
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The policy should be endorsed at senior management level.

Evidence

1. A copy of the policy highlighting the relevant clauses.
2. Confirmation of the name/position of the top-level manager with ownership and responsibility for implementation.
3. Specific examples that demonstrate compliance with the policy objectives.

Additional information

-

Building Management MAT 11 – Fire risk assessment

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Has a fire risk assessment been carried out?

Aim

To recognize and encourage the execution of a fire risk assessment that goes beyond statutory requirements and identifies fire risks to property and the environment and sets out procedures to keep these impacts to a minimum as far as practicable.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. For the purposes of this issue, the fire risk assessment should address property and the environment.
2. A fire risk assessment must be carried out by a competent person. For more complex assessments, the necessary competency may not reside with a single individual, but will instead be provided by a team, including those with relevant local knowledge.
3. A fire risk assessment should be carried out in accordance with a recognized methodology, e.g. NFPA 551 Guide for the Evaluation of Fire Risk Assessment.

Evidence

1. Copy of most recent fire risk assessments carried out.
2. Documentation (such as a certificate) to prove competence of the person undertaking the fire risk assessment.
3. Information regarding relevant qualifications and experience of the person who has undertaken the fire risk assessment.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Competent person: A competent person is 'a person with enough training and experience or knowledge and other qualities to enable them properly to assist in undertaking the preventative and protective measures'.

Building Management MAT 12 – Fire risk management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is there a fire manager or other member of staff in place who manages, monitors and initiate reviews of the relevant procedures as identified in the fire risk assessment?

Aim

To recognize and encourage proactive fire risk assessment practices which help ensure the risk of fire within the asset is kept to a minimum as far as practicable.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Fire risks identified through an appropriate fire risk assessment(s) should be continuously monitored to make sure that the risks of fire are kept to minimum, as far as is practicable. Competent persons should be involved in setting out and undertaking routine fire safety checks throughout the site.
2. Procedures as identified in the fire risk assessment should at least be reviewed annually AND when changes are made to the building.
3. If necessary, evidence provided demonstrates involvement of the fire service and/or accredited third party whom is competent.

Evidence

1. Evidence provided for Building Management MAT 11 – Fire risk assessment.
2. Evidence of fire safety checking through documentation and recent examples.
3. If necessary, evidence of third party approval or fire service involvement.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Competent person: A competent person is 'a person with enough training and experience or knowledge and other qualities to enable them properly to assist in undertaking the preventative and protective measures'. -

Building Management MAT 13 – Emergency plan

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is there an emergency plan in place that includes strategies for the protection of property and/or the environment?

Aim

To encourage fire risk/emergency plans that go beyond statutory requirements and aim to protect property and the environment in addition to people.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes, protection of property
4	Yes, protection of property and environmental impacts

Assessment criteria

1. For the purposes of this issue, the emergency plan should address property and/or the environment.
2. In simple premises, the emergency plan may be no more than a fire action notice.
3. In multi-occupied and more complex premises, the emergency plan will need to be more detailed and compiled only after consultation with other responsible people, e.g. owners or other employees, who have control (or some control) over the building.
4. A complex building will usually require trained staff to assist other occupants who are not necessarily familiar with the building or its safety systems.
5. The following should at least be included or taken into consideration when developing an emergency plan:

    a. Providing an accessible means of escape solution should be an integral part of the fire safety management process.

    b. Fire safety management should take into account the full range of people who might use the premises, paying particular attention to the needs of people with physical or mental impairments.

    c. When providing means of escape for a building, intervention and assistance by the fire and rescue services should not be assumed or relied upon.

    d. In addition to life safety considerations, the fire safety plan may also include:

i. Mitigation of potential environmental impacts of fire (e.g. water run-off)

ii. Risk management, business continuity, contingency planning, restart planning

iii. Contingency plans for salvage and damage control

Evidence

1. A copy of the fire risk/emergency plan with sections that relate to the protection of building and contents identified.

Additional information

-

Building Management MAT 14 – Natural hazard management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is a policy to enhance the protection of the asset from risks arising from natural hazards in place?

Aim

To recognize and encourage policies that are in place to reduce risk of damage from natural hazards.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. A policy to enhance the protection of the asset from risks arising from **relevant** natural hazards should be in place.
2. Relevant natural hazard risks should have been identified and a policy written by competent individuals/relevant organizations.
3. If there is no perceived threat from natural hazards this must be outlined in the natural risk policy.
4. Natural hazards are natural processes or phenomena occurring in the biosphere or crust that may constitute a damaging event. The list below is not intended to be exhaustive, but provides an indication of the type of hazards that should be considered to meet the definition. Other natural hazards may be relevant under this issue. Relevance will be dependent on local geography, geology, hydrology and climate factors and the Assessor should be satisfied that appropriate local expertise has been sought by the client/design team to identify these fully:
    a. Floods (addressed in Asset Performance POL 02 – Flood risk assessment)
    b. Natural disasters of geological origin such as volcanic eruptions, earthquakes and landslides
    c. Natural disasters of climatic or meteorological origin such as droughts, avalanches, wave surges including tsunamis and tidal waves, and wind storms including cyclones, hurricanes, tornadoes, tropical storms, and typhoons
    d. Wildfires

Evidence

1. A copy of the natural hazard risk policy/strategy.

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

2. Copy of qualification of person that has written the natural hazard risk policy.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Competent individual: an individual (or individuals) with relevant technical and professional experience suitable to:

a. Determine the potential for natural hazards in the region of the development
b. Determine the likely impacts on the site, building and locality
c. Subsequently identify appropriate mitigation measures

This (or these) individual(s) should practice to and abide by a professional code of conduct or similar.

BREEAM® USA

Waste

The Waste category is not assessed within Part 2 of the BREEAM USA In-Use assessment.

Land Use and Ecology

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
LE 03	Ecology report	4
LE 04	Biodiversity action plan	4
LE 05	External landscaping/maintenance	2
Total credits available		**10**

Building Management LE 03 – Ecology report

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Has an ecology report been developed?

Aim

Encouraging organizations to establish the ecological value of their asset/site and improve the ecological value based on recommendations that have been made by a suitably qualified ecologist.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
1	Yes, none of the suggested improvements have been implemented
2	Yes, no ecology has been identified on site
2	Yes, and major improvements have been implemented
4	Yes, and all improvements have been implemented
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The ecology report detailing the outcomes of the ecology survey must either be written by an individual that meets the Suitable Qualified Ecologist (SQE) criteria or, where it is written by an ecologist who does not meet the SQE criteria, it has been reviewed and signed off by an SQE who must have found it to be:
    a. Representing sound industry practice
    b. Written objectively (avoiding invalid biased and exaggerated statements)
    c. Appropriate given the local site conditions and scope of works proposed
2. The ecologist must base their findings on data collected from a site visit conducted at appropriate time(s) of the year, when different plant and animal species are evident.
3. An SQE must be independent of the organization.

Evidence

1. Copy of ecology survey, including report.

2. Evidence that the ecology survey was carried out by a competent individual such as: copies of relevant documents, qualifications, resume or industry membership.
3. Evidence that the recommendations were implemented.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Suitably Qualified Ecologist: An individual achieving all the following items can be considered to be "suitably qualified" for the purposes of a BREEAM USA In-Use assessment:

a. Holds a degree or equivalent qualification in ecology or in a related subject comprising a significant ecology component.

b. Is a practicing ecologist, with a minimum of three years relevant experience (within the last five years). Such experience must clearly demonstrate a practical understanding of factors affecting ecology in relation to construction and the built environment; including, acting in an advisory capacity to provide recommendations for ecological protection, enhancement and mitigation measures. The relevant experience must relate to the region that the assessment is being carried out in.

BREEAM® USA

Building Management LE 04 – Biodiversity action plan

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is a biodiversity action plan in place that sets specific targets to enhance the ecological value of the site?

Aim

To encourage organizations to develop a biodiversity action plan based on the outcomes of the ecology survey that set targets and is reviewed on a regular basis to enable assets to maintain and enhance the ecological value of the site.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes
4	Not applicable, the ecology survey determined that there was no biodiversity on site

Assessment criteria

1. A Biodiversity Action Plan (BAP) should set targets that are:
    a. Specific to the asset/site
    b. Measurable and achievable
    c. Realistic and time bound
2. The BAP should be underpinned by the findings of the site ecology survey, which has been undertaken by a competent person. A competent person in this instance is a suitably qualified ecologist (SQE).
3. The BAP should be reviewed at least when large changes to the asset/site are made.
4. The BAP should link to local and regional biodiversity requirements in accordance with the Convention on Biological Diversity where applicable.

Evidence

1. Copy of biodiversity plan/strategy.
2. Evidence that the plan/strategy was developed by a competent individual such as copies of relevant documents, qualifications, resume or industry membership.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Suitably Qualified Ecologist: An individual achieving all the following items can be considered to be "suitably qualified" for the purposes of a BREEAM USA In-Use International assessment:

a. Holds a degree or equivalent qualification in ecology or in a related subject comprising a significant ecology component.

b. Is a practicing ecologist, with a minimum of three years relevant experience (within the last five years). Such experience must clearly demonstrate a practical understanding of factors affecting ecology in relation to construction and the built environment; including, acting in an advisory capacity to provide recommendations for ecological protection, enhancement and mitigation measures. The relevant experience must relate to the region that the assessment is being carried out in.

Other information

Convention on Biological Diversity – For more information regarding this please visit the official website: http://www.cbd.int/convention/

BREEAM® USA

Building Management LE 05 – External landscaping/maintenance

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is there a policy/plan in place to maintain and improve the ecological value of the asset and its immediate site?

Aim

To encourage organizations to develop a policy/plan that maintains and improves the ecological value of the asset and its immediate site.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Organizations responsible for site landscaping should either,
    a. Have their own policies that stipulate that the work they undertake will maintain or enhance the ecological value on site.

    OR

    b. Have contractual agreements with building management/building owner that stipulate that the work they undertake will maintain or enhance the ecological value on site.
2. The policy/plan should consist of (but is not limited to):
    a. Landscaping
    b. Integrated pest management
    c. Cleaning of façade, landscaping, and hardscape
    d. Planting/installation of features to enhance flora and fauna on site

Evidence

1. Copy of relevant policy or contractual agreement.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Integrated Pest Management (IPM) is a method of controlling pests by prevention, monitoring, and control. This method of pest control offers the opportunity to eliminate or drastically reduce the use of pesticides, and to minimize the toxicity of and exposure to any products that are used.

Other information

External landscaping and maintenance plans would be informed by the outcomes of the ecological survey and biodiversity action plan. This will ensure that the ecological value of the site has been established and that the correct measures and plans are in place to ensure that the ecological value will be maintained.

BREEAM® USA

Pollution

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
POL 07	Night time light pollution	4
POL 08	Chemical storage	4
POL 09	Secondary containment	2
POL 10	Light-liquid separators	2
POL 11	Refrigerants	2
POL 12	Land contamination mitigation	4
POL 13	Emergency preparedness and response	2
POL 14	Complaints procedure	4
Total credits available		**24**

BREEAM® USA

Building Management POL 07 – Night time light pollution

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are steps taken to minimize night time light pollution arising from internal and external lighting?

Aim

To ensure that internal and external lighting is concentrated in the appropriate areas and that upward lighting is minimized, reducing unnecessary light pollution, and nuisance to neighboring properties.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes, routine checks and monitoring is performed by building/facility management
4	Yes, a light pollution survey has been conducted by a third party and all recommendations have been fully implemented

Assessment criteria

1. A light pollution survey should (at least) be undertaken:
    a. When significant changes are made to the building and/or the site
    b. Once every 4 years
2. Internal and external lighting should be designed to reduce light pollution. Design measures could include for example:
    a. Selecting fittings that focus light onto desired areas only
    b. Using light sources with the minimum intensity required to achieve desired luminosity levels
    c. Internal and external lighting can be automatically switched off between 11pm and 6am. Options to achieve this are, but are not limited to:
        i. Providing a timer for all internal and external lighting set to the appropriate hours
        ii. By formal requirements in contracts for staff that is last to leave occupied spaces within the asset
3. If there is no external lighting on or around the assessed development, the requirements only apply to internal lighting.

4. Where light fittings are specified to comply with specific security standards and these conflict with these BREEAM USA In-Use criteria they can be excluded from the assessment of this issue. In these circumstances, the Assessor must obtain evidence confirming that the specific security standards are applicable to the assessed development.
5. Where a different curfew time applies for other reasons (e.g. noise control), consideration should be given to the co-ordination of the curfews, e.g. allowing sufficient time of operation for the lighting after the conclusion of the activity to facilitate crowd dispersal, particularly where large numbers of spectators are involved.
6. Where non-security lighting is considered to be essential between 11pm and 6am, i.e. for buildings which open/operate between these times, the lighting system is able to automatically switch to lower levels of lighting recommended for lighting during these hours (or provide these lower levels at all times).
7. Flush stud lights used for safety purposes in vehicle maneuvering areas may be excluded from the assessment.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence confirming that external luminaires are designed to restrict upward light and light spill
2. Confirmation that lighting is switched off after a set time.
3. Copies of sections of light pollution survey specifying results and recommendations.

Additional information

-

Building Management POL 08 – Chemical storage

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are all hazardous chemicals stored in areas with adequate containment to deal with ≥110% of the chemicals stored?

Aim

To reduce the impact of a chemical leak/spill by ensuring that these areas remain effective in the event of a leak/spill

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Not applicable, there are no hazardous chemical stored in the asset
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Containment for spillage can come in the form of one mitigation measure or the combination of several. Mitigation measures can include, (but are not limited to):
    a. Double skinned tanks
    b. Drip trays
    c. Non-permeable membranes in the room where tanks are located
    d. Secondary containment

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of chemical storage.
2. Confirmation that facilities are appropriate to the area they serve.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Secondary containment: a structure made of an impermeable material that forms a barrier to retain liquids.

Building Management POL 09 – Secondary containment

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Are secondary containment areas checked regularly to ensure that they remain effective?

Aim

To maintain the effectiveness of any secondary containment areas.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	No secondary containment areas required as no liquids requiring secondary containment storage are stored on-site
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Where secondary containment areas are present internal checks are conducted at planned intervals to determine whether the secondary containment areas are being maintained to operate at optimum efficiency.

Evidence

1. Copy of logbook or inspection schedule.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Secondary containment: a structure made of an impermeable material that forms a barrier to retain liquids.

Building Management POL 10 – Light-liquid separators

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Does the scope of the maintenance policy cover light-liquid separators?

Aim

To ensure light-liquid separators are maintained to operate as intended.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	No light-liquid separators on site
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Detailed inspection and maintenance requirements should be documented in the maintenance policy.

Evidence

1. Copy of maintenance policy highlighting the light-liquid separator maintenance schedule.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Light-liquid separators are a vessel, as part of a surface water drainage system, into which potentially contaminated wastewater will flow and where light liquids are separated from the wastewater by means of gravity and/or coalescence, and retained.

Building Management POL 11 – Refrigerants

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is a strategy and timetable to replace refrigerants with low environmental impact alternatives in place?

Aim

To reduce the impact of refrigerants on the environment.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	No as refrigerants have been replaced with low environmental impact alternatives/were never used
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. The strategy needs to cover:
    a. Equipment containing refrigerants which is to be replaced
    b. What low environmental impact refrigerant the existing refrigerant is to be replaced with
    c. The timescale over which this is to be delivered
2. The strategy should cover air conditioning and refrigeration systems equipment within the building for the following uses, including:
    a. Comfort cooling
    b. Cold storage, including commercial food/drink display cabinets but excluding domestic appliances e.g. refrigerators and freezers
    c. Process based cooling loads e.g. servers/IT equipment
3. Small multiple hermetic systems are exempt where the refrigerant charge in each unit is 11lbs or less.
4. If replacement has already taken place then full credits can be awarded.

Evidence

1. Copy of the strategy/objectives relating to replacing refrigerants.

Additional information

Other information

Table 14: Examples of refrigerants with a low Global Warming Potential (GWP)

R-Number	Chemical name	GWP (100-yr)
R-30	Dichloromethane	9
R-170	Ethane	3
R-290	Propane	3
R-600	Butane	3
R-600a	Isobutane	3
R-702	Hydrogen	5.8
R-717	Ammonia	0
R-718	Water	<1
R-729	Air (Nitrogen, oxygen, argon)	0
R-744	Carbon dioxide	1
R1216	Ethylene	3
R-1234yf	2,3,3,3-Tetrafluoropropene	<1
R-1270	Propylene	3

Sources: The United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP) '2010 Report of the Refrigeration, Air-conditioning and Heat Pumps Technical Options Committee'

EN 378-1:2008+A2:2012: Refrigerating systems and heat pumps - Safety and environmental requirements. Part 1: Basic requirements, definitions, classification and selection criteria - Annex E.

The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change 5th Assessment Report, Chapter 8, 'Anthropogenic and Natural Radiative Forcing', 2013

'Global environmental impacts of the hydrogen economy', Derwent *et al*, Int. J. Nuclear Hydrogen Production and Application, Vol. 1, No. 1, 2006

Building Management POL 12 – Land contamination mitigation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Has an assessment of the site been performed to check for potential land contamination issues (e.g. environmental due diligence, desk study, intrusive investigation, etc.)?

Aim

To recognize and encourage actions taken which prevent/reduce risk of the site having a negative impact on the surrounding environment.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes
4	Yes, and all contamination issues have been addressed
4	Yes, no contamination issues have been found

Assessment criteria

1. For 2 credits: A contaminated land specialist's site investigation should identify:
    a. Any areas of contamination and the degree of contamination
    b. The contaminant sources/types
    c. The options for remediating sources of pollution which present unacceptable risk to the site and surrounding environment
2. For 4 credits, in addition to the above, the following must apply: Any areas of contamination identified in the contaminated land site investigation have been remediated in accordance with the remediation strategy and its implementation plan.

Evidence

1. Copy of the land specialist's contamination report.
2. A copy of the professional report (or relevant sections of the report) confirming:
    a. Description of the remedial works undertaken
    b. Description of the pollution linkages addressed (this may not be applicable where the contaminant is a non-native invasive plant species)

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Contaminant is defined as any solid, liquid or gaseous material in, or on the ground to be covered by the building, which is classed as a hazard and therefore presents an unacceptable risk to human health and the environment. The definition also includes land significantly infested by non-native invasive plant species.

Non-native invasive plant species are non-indigenous species that adversely affect the habitats they invade economically, environmentally or ecologically. Further information on control and disposal together with legislative requirements relating to such species should be obtained from the relevant environmental body.

A relevant pollutant linkage is one that has been identified during the risk assessment stage as representing inacceptable risks to human health or the environment.

BREEAM® USA

Building Management POL 13 – Emergency preparedness and response

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is a response plan in place to deal with pollution incidents in line with national standards or best practice guidelines?

Aim

To reduce the impact of any pollution incidents on the surrounding environment.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	No pollution risks identified for asset
2	Yes
2	Not applicable as no sources of pollution are located on the site

Assessment criteria

1. A response plan outlining emergency response procedures for dealing with potential pollution incidents should be in place. Sources of potential pollution include (but are not limited to):
    a. Fuel storage (e.g. diesel for emergency back-up generators)
    b. Refrigerants that are stored on site
2. The response plan should be periodically reviewed, especially after the occurrence of any accidents or emergency situations.
3. Where practical, the response procedures should be tested periodically.

Evidence

1. Copy of the response plan outlining the incident response procedures.
2. Records of any testing of emergency response procedures.

Additional information

-

Building Management POL 14 – Complaints procedure

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is there a complaints procedure in place that deals with any issues relating to the asset and associated operations (e.g. noise, odor, and light)?

Aim

To ensure any issues affecting building users or occupiers in the surrounding areas can be raised through a formal route and dealt with effectively.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. The complaints procedure should detail how to deal with any complaints quickly and impartially.

Evidence

1. Copy of relevant complaints procedure

Additional information

-

Part 3: Occupier Management

Assessment of the occupier's policies and activities that are conducted within the building

Issue reference	Categories	Credits available
MAN	Management	92
HEA	Health & Wellbeing	112
ENE	Energy	124
TRA	Transport	89
WAT	Water	83
MAT	Materials	106
WST	Waste	79
LE	Land Use & Ecology	13
POL	Pollution	91
Total credits available		**789**

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Management

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
MAN 14	Environmental management policy	4
MAN 15	Environmental management issues	16
MAN 16	Environmental management implementation	13
MAN 17	Environmental objectives	4
MAN 18	Organizational performance review	2
MAN 19	Sustainability report	3
MAN 20	Green lease	4
Total credits available		**46**

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management MAN 14 – Environmental management policy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	Yes

Question

Is there an environmental management policy and/or procedure in place?

Aim

To recognize and encourage the implementation of a formal environmental management policy in which the intent and objectives to manage environmental activities are outlined and responsibilities allocated.

Minimum standards

1. To gain a 'Pass' rating there must be evidence that an environmental policy and/or procedure is/are under development.
2. To gain a 'Very Good' rating there must be evidence that an environmental policy and/or procedure is in place and has been endorsed by the board of directors/senior management.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	There is no environmental policy and/or procedure
1	An environmental policy and/or procedure is under development
2	An environmental policy and/or procedure is under development with a ≤ 2 year endorsement plan
3	An environmental policy and/or procedure is in place and has been endorsed by the board of directors/senior management
4	An environmental policy and/or procedure has been developed with stakeholders' consultation in compliance with the guidance given in ISO 14001, or equivalent and stakeholders' comments have been integrated
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The environmental management policy should:
    a. Be appropriate to the nature, scale and environmental impacts of an organization's activities, products and services
    b. Include a commitment to continual improvement and prevention of pollution

c. Include a commitment to comply with applicable legal requirements and with other requirements which relate to an organizations specific environmental aspects

d. Install a framework for setting and reviewing environmental objectives and targets

e. Be documented, implemented and maintained

f. Is communicated to all persons working for or on behalf of the organization

Evidence

1. For 1 credit: Copy of the confirmation that the environmental management policy and/or procedure is being developed with the proposed timing and amount currently completed.
2. For 2 credits: Confirmation that the environmental management policy and/or procedure is being developed with a proposed time line showing that it will be implemented within 2 years.
3. For 3 credits: A copy of the environmental management policy and / or relevant procedures signed by top management.
4. For 4 credits: Copy of current ISO 14001 certificate, or equivalent third party certification document.

Additional information

Other information

See: ISO 14001 "*Environmental Management Systems – Requirements with guidance for use*" (ISO 14001:2004 A.2 Environmental Policy, ISO 14001:2015 5.2 Environmental Policy)

The environmental policy is the driver for implementing and improving an organization's environmental management so that it can maintain and/or improve its environmental performance. A policy should therefore reflect commitment of top management to comply with applicable legal requirements, to prevent pollution and to continually improve.

About ISO 14001

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 14000 series sets the criteria for companies and organizations of all types to identify and appropriately manage their environmental impacts and responsibilities. The ISO 14001 standard maps out a framework that an organization can follow to set up an effective environmental management system. Third party certification provides assurance to all stakeholders that the environmental management system is meets the international standard and is effectively implemented in the organization.

All ISO standards are reviewed every five years to establish if a revision is required to keep it current and relevant for the marketplace. Organizations currently certified to ISO 14001:2004 have three years to transition to the current standard, ISO 14001:2015.

Occupier Management MAN 15 – Environmental management issues

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
16	Yes

Question

Which of the following issues do the environmental management arrangements specifically measure/manage?

Aim

To encourage the management of a broad range of environmental issues.

Minimum standards

1. To gain a 'Good' rating, environmental management arrangements that measure and monitor energy consumption, energy efficiency and supply including targets for reduction of energy consumption contained within an energy plan, AND waste reduction and management must be in place within the occupying organization.
2. In addition to point 1, to gain a 'Very Good' rating, environmental management arrangements are in place to measure and monitor Pollution reductions.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credits	Issue
1	Energy consumption, energy efficiency and supply including targets for reduction of energy consumption contained within an energy plan
1	Water consumption, efficiency and wastage
1	Waste reduction and management
1	Pollution reduction/control
1	Reductions in the carbon footprint of business travel
1	Responsible purchasing of products and services
1	Reductions in the carbon footprint of staff commuting
1	Decision processes which actively promote more sustainable purchasing practices including consideration of cost, time and quality
1	Decision processes which address environmental and sustainability issues alongside cost, time and quality when planning capital expenditure
1	Decision processes which address environmental and sustainability issues alongside cost, time and quality when planning accommodation requirements
1	Measurements of company carbon footprint against a verifiable system in $kgCO_2/ft^2$

Credits	Issue
1	Land use, ecology and biodiversity
1	Environmental policy in use as a minimum standard for all sub-contractors
1	Policy to offset carbon emission
1	Promotion of flexible working arrangements to reduce unnecessary travel
1	Promotion of home working arrangements to reduce unnecessary travel
-	Other

Assessment criteria

1. An organization should identify the environmental aspects within the scope of its business operations, taking into account the inputs and outputs associated (intended and unintended) with its activities. This includes products and services, planned or new developments, or new or modified activities for example.
2. An organization should establish, implement and maintain procedures(s) that are documented and kept up to date, ensuring that significant environmental aspects are taken into account in establishing, implementing and maintaining appropriate environmental management.
3. An organization should consider aspects that it can influence, such as those related to goods and services used by the organization and those related to products and services that it provides.

Evidence

1. Copy of the Environmental Management processes and procedures with relevant sections highlighted.

Additional information

Other information

See: ISO 14001 "*Environmental Management Systems – Requirements with guidance for use*" (ISO 14001:2004 A.3.1 Environmental aspects, ISO 14001:2015 6.1 Planning: Actions to address risks and opportunities)

About ISO 14001

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 14000 series sets the criteria for companies and organizations of all types to identify and appropriately manage their environmental impacts and responsibilities. The ISO 14001 standard maps out a framework that an organization can follow to set up an effective environmental management system. Third party certification provides assurance to all stakeholders that the environmental management system is meets the international standard and is effectively implemented in the organization.

All ISO standards are reviewed every five years to establish if a revision is required to keep it current and relevant for the marketplace. Organizations currently certified to ISO 14001:2004 have three years to transition to the current standard, ISO 14001:2015.

Occupier Management MAN 16 – Environmental management implementation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
13	No

Question

To what degree have the environmental management arrangements been implemented and improvements been managed?

Aim

To encourage the implementation of environmental management arrangements throughout the organization.

Available credits

Credits	Answer options
1	All environmental aspects and all prevention policies have been identified and defined
1	All environmental issues that may arise from within the asset have been regularly reviewed.
1	Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed
1	Management arrangements include procedures to incorporate feedback from staff, clients and other stakeholders
1	Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the environmental policies, objectives and targets
1	Formal, regular training is provided for key environmental management staff
1	Where no Environmental Management System (EMS) is in place, an EMS is under development
2	EMS is in place that includes procedures to review position against an appropriate peer group through published guidance, benchmarking etc.
4	An Environmental management system (EMS) has been in place for at least 3 years covering activities which are related to the building/site under assessment in accordance with the principles of ISO 14001 and has an independent third party audit/certification
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Management should ensure the availability or resources essential to establish, implement, maintain and improve the environmental management policy.
2. Appropriate roles, responsibilities and authorities should be defined, documented and communicated in order to facilitate effective environmental management. As part of this commitment, top management

should designate a specific management representative(s) with defined responsibility and authority for implementing the environmental management system.

3. There should be regular reporting to top management on the performance of the environmental management system for review, including recommendations for improvement.
4. The organization should identify the awareness, knowledge, understanding and skills needed by any person with responsibility and authority to perform tasks relating to environmental management on its behalf if necessary. Competence should be measured on the basis of appropriate education, training and experience, and associated records shall be retained.
5. The organization should ensure that employees are aware of the organization's environmental policy and environmental management system as well as the environmental aspects of the organization's activities, products and services that could be affected by their work.
6. Organizations should have implemented procedures for receiving, documenting and responding to relevant communications from interested parties.
7. When considering external communication about environmental aspects, organizations should take into consideration the views and information needs of all interested parties. Where organizations elect to communicate externally, the organization should establish a procedure to do so. Methods of external communication can include annual reports, newsletters, websites and community meetings.

Evidence

1. Staff interviews.
2. Copy of the environmental management agreement.
3. Copy of EMS surveillance audit report(s) conduct by appropriate third party organization (if applicable).
4. Copy of certificate reference number (if applicable).
5. Records and certificates of employee(s) qualifications and/or relevant training (if applicable).
6. Copy of benchmark data used (if applicable).
7. Evidence of Management review(s); minutes, action plans (if applicable).

Additional information

Other information

See: ISO 14001 "*Environmental Management Systems – Requirements with guidance for use*" (ISO 14001:2004 A.4 Implementation and operation, ISO 14001:2015 7 Support)

About ISO 14001

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) 14000 series sets the criteria for companies and organizations of all types to identify and appropriately manage their environmental impacts and responsibilities. The ISO 14001 standard maps out a framework that an organization can follow to set up an effective environmental management system. Third party certification provides assurance to all stakeholders that the environmental management system is meets the international standard and is effectively implemented in the organization.

All ISO standards are reviewed every five years to establish if a revision is required to keep it current and relevant for the marketplace. Organizations currently certified to ISO 14001:2004 have three years to transition to the current standard, ISO 14001:2015.

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management MAN 17 – Environmental objectives

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	Yes

Question

In the last reporting year for the organization, what percentage of organizational environmental objectives were achieved?

Aim

To encourage and recognize the continual improvement of environmental performance.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥ 50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

Assessment criteria

1. The organization must have a minimum of 6 set targets within the Environmental Management Policy in order to achieve any credits.
2. Environmental objectives are to be established and maintained at relevant functions and levels within the organization. These should be specific and measurable wherever practicable, and consistent with the environmental policy, including the commitments to prevention of pollution, compliance with applicable legal requirements, and continual improvement.
3. Organizations should be able to demonstrate that the credit criteria has been met by providing up to date records of environmental impacts on site which have been targeted and met.
4. Targets should address major relevant environmental impacts for which the organization is responsible, such as those identified in Environmental Management Policy.
5. Organizations should be able to demonstrate how they have achieved reductions.

Evidence

1. Copy of documented environmental objectives.
2. Internal audit reports measuring environmental performance.
3. Management Review Minutes.

4. Organizational Corporate Sustainability Report, documenting performance against objectives.

Additional information

Other information

See: ISO 14001 "*Environmental Management Systems – Requirements with guidance for use*" (ISO 14001:2004 4.3.3 Objectives, targets and programme(s); ISO 14001:2015 6.2 Environmental objectives and planning to achieve them)

The program for establishing objectives should include, where appropriate and practical, consideration of planning, design, production, marketing, and disposal stages. This can be undertaken for both current and new activities, products or services. For products, this can address design, materials, production processes, use and ultimate disposal. For installations or significant modifications of processes, this can address planning, design, construction, commissioning, operation and, at the appropriate time determined by the organization, decommissioning.

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management MAN 18 – Organizational performance review

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

How often is a review of the organizational performance against the environmental objectives carried out by the board of directors/senior management?

Aim

To encourage the development and review of environmental objectives to continually improve organizational performance.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	Never
0	Infrequently
1	At least annually
2	At least twice a year

Assessment criteria

1. Reviews should include, but are not limited to:
    a. Results of evaluations of compliance with legal requirements.
    b. Communication(s) from external interested parties, including complaints.
    c. The environmental performance of the organization.
    d. Performance against objectives and targets.
    e. Follow-up actions from previous reviews.
    f. Changing circumstances, including developments in legal and other requirements related to the organizations environmental impacts.
    g. Recommendations for improvement.
2. A management review should cover the scope of the environmental management system, although not all elements of the environmental system need to be reviewed at once and the review process may take place over a period of time.

Evidence

1. Review minutes, indicating agreed recommendations for improvement.
2. Results of review and changes made.

Additional information

See: ISO 14001 "*Environmental Management Systems – Requirements with guidance for use*" (ISO 14001:2004 4.6 Management Review; ISO 14001:2015 9.3 Management review).

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management MAN 19 – Sustainability report

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	Yes

Question

Does the organization produce a sustainability/Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) report?

Aim

To ensure transparent communication of social, economic and environmental performance.

Minimum standards

1. To gain a 'Good' rating the occupying organization must provide appropriate evidence that a CSR report exists but hasn't been independently verified.
2. To gain a 'Very Good' rating the occupying organization must ensure that the CSR report has been independently verified by a third-party assurance/verification body and is accessible to all internal and external stakeholders.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	No
1	Yes. Internal report which is not independently verified
2	Yes. Report is independently verified by a third-party assurance/verification body and is accessible to all internal and external stakeholders
3	Yes. Report conforms to the Global Reporting Initiative (GRI) guidelines and it is independently verified by a third-party assurance/verification body and is accessible to all internal and external stakeholders
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The sustainability/CSR report should provide a balanced and reasonable representation of the sustainability performance of the reporting organization – covering both positive and negative issues.
2. The report should have been written based on accurate, verifiable data, collected by the organization over the period of one year. A report which covers a period of more than 1 year is compliant when it includes data for each yearly interval.

Evidence

1. Copy of sustainability report with sections about the performance of the organization against sustainability objectives and targets.

2. Name of third-party organization whom independently verified report (if applicable)
3. Review organization website for electronic copy of publication.

Additional information

Other information

The standardized content for International Sustainability/Corporate Social Responsibility Reports is documented by the Global Reporting Initiative (GRI). The GRI express that organizations aiming to report on sustainability performance must report on their Social, Economic and Environmental performance indicators.

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management MAN 20 – Green lease

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Are tenants engaged and actively involved in a green lease with their landlord?

Aim

To ensure the collaboration between building owners and occupiers, in order to improve the environmental performance of the building.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes (with qualitative targets)
4	Yes (with qualitative and quantitative targets on at least lighting and energy)
4	Not applicable, the building is owner-occupied

Assessment criteria

1. See compliance requirement from Building Management MAN 11 – Green lease.

Evidence

1. Copy of green lease agreement.

Additional information

-

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Health and Wellbeing

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
HEA 25	Occupier satisfaction	10
HEA 26	Health and wellbeing management targets	57
HEA 27	Health and wellbeing management objectives	4
HEA 28	View out	2
HEA 29	Communal rest areas	2
Total credits available		**75**

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management HEA 25 – Occupier satisfaction

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
10	Yes

Question

Are the following key issues measured, monitored, and managed?

Aim

To ensure that staff capabilities, prospects and wellbeing are enhanced by the organization.

Minimum standards

1. To gain a 'Good' rating the occupying organization is required to measure, monitor and manage the skills and capabilities of employees.
2. In addition to point 1, to gain a 'Very Good' rating the occupying organization is required to measure, monitor and manage workplace comfort.
3. In addition to point 1 and point 2, to gain an 'Excellent' rating the occupying organization is required to measure, monitor and manage the continual professional development of their employees.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credits	Answer options
1	Skills and capabilities of staff
1	Social interaction/team building
1	Workplace comfort
1	Productivity
2	Staff satisfaction
2	Continual professional development
2	Management effectiveness
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Measuring and monitoring of these aspects should be done using a formal process; this could include, but is not limited to:
    a. Regular meetings/reviews
    b. Questionnaires

c. Auditing

d. Staff event days

Evidence

1. Description of how employees' records are held locally. Assessors must verify that these records are updated when new employees are hired or when employees leave.
2. Copy of the building occupants satisfaction feedback forms, procedure and/or survey.
3. Minutes from employee meetings.
4. Description of annual performance review. This should include the date the review is undertaken, a copy of the performance review structure and how performance reviews are communicated to staff.
5. Notes from staff interviews conducted.

Additional information

-

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management HEA 26 – Health and well-being management targets

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
57	No

Question

Are management arrangements that set health and well-being targets and monitor implementation?

Aim

To recognize and encourage management arrangements that monitor and set relevant health and well-being targets aimed at improving health and well-being for all staff.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credits	Answer option
1	Scope and objectives are defined
1	Health and well-being issues/concerns of staff are evaluated and recorded
1	Changes in health and well-being issues/concerns of staff are monitored and reported
1	Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed
1	Occupant satisfaction surveys are carried out at least annually
1	Customers/visitor feedback mechanisms are in place
1	Mechanisms are included to incorporate feedback into procedures or strategy
1	Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the health, well-being and safety policies, objectives and targets
1	Signs, notices and posters are displayed in appropriate locations to highlight areas of risk to health and safety
1	Awareness seminars / training sessions are carried out for all staff regarding health and well-being and safety
1	Formal, regular training is provided for staff responsible for health, safety and well-being management
1	Improvement targets are set in line with best practice guidance available (including workplace comfort and human resource management)
1	Certification achieved against a people management standard tailored to help achieve business objectives

Credits	Answer option
1	An environmental management system (EMS) is in place that includes procedures to review position against appropriate peer group through verified published reporting, benchmarking etc.
1	Regular communication is carried out with staff covering health, safety and well-being issues (i.e. through newssheets, meetings, posters, published statistics etc.)
1	A staff mentoring/support system is in place which is independent of staff performance
41*	Initiatives to minimize health risks and promote occupant well-being on site/building/area assessed are undertaken (in line with the appropriate Appendix)*
0	Other

*Appendix section on page 379.

Appendix

The HEA 26A – Health and Wellbeing Appendix lists several in house initiatives that might be utilized by the organization in order to meet the aims of this section.

Assessment criteria

1. Management arrangements should be documented and available to view where applicable.
2. Management arrangements can be combined in a separate document or part of a wider management policy.

Evidence

1. Copy of:
    a. Health/user comfort agreements
    b. Corporate rules
    c. Means of recording work-related injuries or illnesses
    d. Tenant surveys, complaints, etc.
    e. Appropriate certification to a people management standard
2. Copy of records regarding:
    a. First aid/medical use
    b. Health and safety on site
    c. Health policy/user comfort
    d. Employees who have completed relevant training
3. Assessor information for visual inspection of the internal organizational structure of the systems.
4. Date of last feedback.
5. Interviews with employees.

6. Agenda notes and schedules of forward-looking awareness/training sessions.
7. Credentials of the peer group.
8. Information on benchmarks used and date of benchmarks compared to the measured, which were published.
9. Relevant articles written in company newsletter(s).

Additional information

-

Occupier Management HEA 27 – Health and well-being management objectives

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

In the last reporting year for the organization, what percentage of the health and well-being management objectives for the organization was achieved?

Aim

To ensure health and wellbeing objectives are being met.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

Assessment criteria

1. The organization must have a minimum of 6 targets from Occupier Management HEA 26 – Health and well-being management targets in order to achieve any credits.

Evidence

1. Copy of Health and Wellbeing objectives set for the calendar year
2. Review of company website, intranet, and newsletter(s) for publication of results
3. List of objectives indicating which ones have been achieved
4. Interviews with employees

Additional information

-

Occupier Management HEA 28 – View out

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Is there a policy or practice in place to ensure that all workstations or desks for building users in the organization have an adequate external view out of a window?

Aim

To enhance wellbeing within the workspace by allowing building occupants to refocus their eyes from close work activities to reduce the risk of eyestrain or dry eyes.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. The view out should be through an external window providing a view of a landscape or buildings (rather than just sky) at seated eye level (4.0 to 4.5 feet) in the relevant building areas.
2. A view in to an internal courtyard or atrium will comply provided the distance from the opening to the back wall of the courtyard/atrium is at least 35 feet (allowing enough distance for the eyes to refocus).
3. The view cannot be an internal view across the room, as this is likely to become obstructed by partitions, filing cabinets etc.
4. Roof lights and high level windows that do not provide an adequate view out do not meet the requirements.
5. Relevant building areas should be within 25 feet distance of a window or permanent opening providing a view.
6. The distance between the wall with the window/opening and nearest external solid object (i.e. buildings, screens walls/fences) should be ≥35 feet.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence.
2. A copy of building floor plans illustrating the maximum distance to a view out of a window from the furthest workstations.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Relevant building areas are areas within the asset where there are, or will be, workstations or desks for building users.

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management HEA 29 – Communal rest areas

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

Are courses of action undertaken to ensure that indoor and outdoor rest spaces are not used for any other purpose, such as meetings?

Aim

To recognize and encourage the provision of rest areas for building users, which are not subsequently utilized for meetings at times of high demand.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
2	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. If an internal space is used as a communal rest area, the space is prohibited to be used as a meeting room.
2. Rest areas comply with Asset Performance HEA 07- Indoor and/or outdoor space.

Evidence

1. Photographic evidence of each of the communal rest area(s) in the assessed area, indicating signs/guidelines for area usage
2. Copies of policies that are available to staff on how communal rest areas are used.

Additional information

-

Energy

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
ENE 67	Energy policy	3
ENE 68	Energy management arrangements	51
ENE 69	Trends in energy performance data	2
ENE 70	Energy objectives	4
ENE 71	Energy savings	4
Total credits available		**64**

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management ENE 67 – Energy policy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

Question

Which of the following issues are considered within the organization's energy policy?

Aim

To ensure that there is a range of different energy management procedures/policies included in the energy policy.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credits	Answer options
1	Reduction in energy demand
1	Reduction in energy consumption
1	Making further CO_2 reductions through the installation of Low and Zero Carbon technologies

Assessment criteria

1. Reduction in energy demand can be achieved by reducing heating, cooling and small power energy demands. This can be done by, for example:
    a. improving the building envelope
    b. specifying low energy use light fittings
    c. making amendments to cooling and heating temperatures
2. Reduction in energy consumption can be achieved by meeting demand efficiently. This can be done by, for example, the installation of high efficiency boilers, fans and other building services equipment.
3. Low and Zero Carbon (LZC) technologies are installations that are installed on-site, near-site or off-site that employ low or zero carbon sources to generate energy.
4. The energy policy should be signed off at senior level and be actively implemented by dedicated staff members within the organization.
5. An energy policy can be a separate document or part of a wider energy management policy.

Evidence

1. Copy of relevant energy policy/strategy.

Additional information

-

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Occupier Management ENE 68 – Energy management arrangements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
51	Yes

Question

To what extent do management arrangements set energy targets, and monitor implementation for this asset?

Aim

To recognize and encourage management arrangements aimed at improving energy performance and usage awareness.

Minimum standards

To gain 'Good' rating, energy consumption must be actively recorded and monitored.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credit(s) Awarded	Answer option
1	Scope and objectives are defined
1	Energy consumption is actively recorded and monitored
1	A locally or nationally recognized rating system is used to demonstrate operation consumption
1	Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed
1	Management arrangements include procedures to monitor energy consumption
1	Awareness seminars/training sessions are carried out for all staff regarding energy management
1	Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the environmental policies, objectives and targets
1	Includes mechanisms to incorporate feedback into procedures or strategy
1	Formal, regular training is provided for staff responsible for energy management
1	Improvement targets are set in an improvement strategy in line with the maintenance procedures
1	Third party certification under an energy management standard such as ISO 50001:2011 which is either independently audited or certified
40*	Energy saving initiatives are undertaken (in line with the appropriate Appendix)*
0	Other

*Appendix section on page 380

Appendix

The ENE 68A – Energy Appendix lists in-house initiatives that might be utilized by the organization to meet the aims of this section.

Assessment criteria

1. Management arrangements should be documented and available to view where applicable.

Evidence

1. Copy of the Energy Management Strategy.
2. Copy of annual utility bill for all energy uses.
3. Description of energy monitoring process.
4. Training/seminar materials from staff awareness events.
5. List of staff champions and interviews with a small sample of these people.
6. Description/copy of framework by which feedback is provided.
7. Training materials for staff responsible for energy management.
8. Evidence of improvement targets, evidence from Occupier Management ENE 70 – Energy objectives.
9. Third party documentation regarding energy management certification.
10. Where the building has been occupied for more than 3 years: copy of last two years of energy use records.
11. Where the building has been occupied for less than 3 years: copy of last 12 months of energy use records plus policies and procedures for on-going monitoring.

Additional information

-

Occupier Management ENE 69 – Trends in energy performance data

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

How often are the organization's energy performance data trends at this asset reviewed and compared with historical data and performance targets?

Aim

Identifying short and long-term energy performance trends; highlighting opportunities for energy savings and any identifying changes in trends due to the implementation of energy management procedures.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Never
0	Infrequently
1	At least annually
2	At least twice a year

Assessment criteria

1. All energy consumption for the organization at this asset should be measured and compared with historical data and performance targets.

Evidence

1. Relevant spread sheets or energy benchmarking data identifying energy performance trends
2. Relevant documentation indicating what energy management procedures have been implemented and what effect these had on the energy performance trends.

Additional information

-

Occupier Management ENE 70 – Energy objectives

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

In the last reporting year for the organization, what percentage of the organization's energy objectives/targets was achieved?

Aim

To ensure that energy objectives and targets are met; thereby encouraging and recognizing the continual improvement of energy performance.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

Assessment criteria

1. Targets must have been set for the previous year.

Evidence

1. Company reports, declarations, such as the energy management strategy outlining energy targets.
2. Previous target setting documentation.
3. Copy of Energy Management Strategy (relating to set objectives/targets).

Additional information

-

Occupier Management ENE 71 – Energy savings

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What were the organization's energy savings at this asset for the previous reporting year, based on a benchmark of energy used 3 reporting years ago?

Aim

To encourage and recognize energy savings of the asset for various energy sources and systems; thereby reducing energy consumption of the asset.

Available credits

A maximum of **4 credits** are awarded for providing the savings data for one or more of the following energy sources and systems:

Credits awarded	Answer option
4 Credits	Electricity savings of the asset from the utility supply in kWh/year/ft^2
	Natural gas savings by the asset in therms/year/ft^2
	Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG) savings by the asset in kBtu/year/ft^2
	Oil savings by the asset in kBtu/year/ft^2
	Solid fuel savings by the asset in kBtu/year/ft^2
	District heating energy savings by the asset supplied in kBtu/year/ft^2
	District cooling energy savings by the asset supplied in kBtu/year/ft^2
	Increase of renewable energy generated on-site in kWh/year/ft^2

Assessment criteria

1. The energy data that is provided must demonstrate year on year savings.

Evidence

1. Evidence provided for previous questions concerning energy measurement is sufficient.

Additional information

ENERGY STAR Portfolio Manager® allows the energy consumption for all fuel types to be entered in a multitude of measurement units (depending on the fuel) and then translates this to the standard unit of measurement specified in this question. Assets using ENERGY STAR Portfolio Manager® can run a report on Energy Use per Fuel Source to provide data to determine the answer to this question for the reporting period.

Transport

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
TRA 05	Transport requirements	12
TRA 06	Transport management arrangements	59
TRA 07	Local public transport	4
TRA 08	Local amenities	4
TRA 09	Transport objectives	4
TRA 10	Transport impact of commuting	2
TRA 11	Transport impact of business travel	2
TRA 12	Transport impact of goods delivery	2
Total credits available		**89**

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management TRA 05 – Transport requirements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
12	Yes

Question

Are the environmental impacts associated with the following transport requirements reduced/managed by the organization at this asset?

Aim

To ensure that the environmental impacts of all travel to and from the asset are reduced/managed.

Minimum standards

To gain an 'Excellent' rating the occupying organization is required to reduce and manage the impact of staff commuting.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credits	Answer options
2	Visitor/customer travel
2	Deliveries
4	Staff commuting
4	Business travel
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Environmental impacts associated with the mentioned transport requirements should be established and reduced/managed. Environmental impacts can include, but are not limited to:
    a. Fossil fuel use
    b. Emissions related to transport
    c. Pollution related to transport
    d. Noise
2. The management of the environmental impacts associated with the travel requirements can be combined in a separate document (travel plan) or part of a wider management policy.

Evidence

1. Copy of the organization specific management arrangements related to the environmental impacts of the travel requirements.

2. Copy of the site-specific transport survey/assessment,
3. Copy of travel policies/procedures.
4. Photographic evidence confirming installation of measures that support the management arrangements.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

A travel plan is a strategy for managing all travel and transport within an organization, principally to increase choice and reduce reliance on the car by seeking to improve access to site or development by sustainable modes of transport. A travel plan contains both physical and behavioral measures to increase travel choices and reduce reliance on single occupancy car travel. A travel plan can be as simple or complex as the building and its operation/use requires.

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management TRA 06 – Transport management arrangements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
59	No

Question

To what extent are transport management arrangements in place to allow monitoring against set targets for the organization at this asset?

Aim

To recognize and encourage management aimed at reducing the effects of transport to the environment and increasing awareness of travel impacts.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credit(s) Awarded	Answer option
1	Scope and objectives are defined
1	Business travel impacts are measured and recorded
1	Staff commuting impacts are measured and recorded
1	Visitor / client travel impacts are measured and recorded
1	Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed
1	Business travel impacts are monitored
1	Staff commuting impacts are monitored
1	Visitor / client travel impacts are monitored
1	Staff are encouraged to follow the transport hierarchy to minimize carbon impacts of transport when selecting mode of travel
1	Initiatives are undertaken to minimize air-based business travel patterns
1	Financial incentives are provided to promote carbon efficient means of transport for staff
1	Carbon efficient means of transport are provided for staff and visitors
1	Awareness seminars / training sessions are carried out for all staff regarding minimization and management of transport impacts
1	Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the transport policies, objectives and targets
1	Formal, regular training is provided for staff responsible for transport management

1	Includes mechanisms to incorporate feedback into procedures or strategy
1	Improvement targets are set in line with best practice guidance available
1	An environmental management system (EMS) is in place that includes procedures to review position against an appropriate peer group through published guidance, benchmarking etc. with regards to transport
1	Deliveries are scheduled to minimize impacts on staff and surrounding environment
40*	Initiatives are undertaken to minimize car-based travel patterns (in line with the appropriate Appendix)*
0	Other

*Appendix section on page 382

Appendix

The TRA 06A – Transport Appendix lists several in house initiatives that might be utilized by the organization to meet the aims of this section.

Assessment criteria

1. Management arrangements should be documented and available to view where applicable.
2. The transport management arrangements can be combined in a separate document or part of a wider management policy.

Evidence

1. A copy of the organization specific management arrangements/Travel Plan, highlighting relevant clauses:
    a. A copy of the site-specific transport survey/assessment
    b. A copy of travel policies/procedures
    c. Records demonstrating regular reviews of transport policy
    d. Records demonstrating monitoring of relevant travel
    e. Means of motivating staff, including evidence of incentives
    f. Training material/dates and certificates for training completion
    g. Interviews with staff
    h. Information on deliveries to site
    i. Photographic evidence
    j. Visual inspection notes

Additional information

-

Occupier Management TRA 07 – Local public transport

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is there an agreement in place to liaise with local public transport operators to improve services to the asset and ensure that information is readily available for building users?

Aim

To ensure the availability of public transport links for people travelling to and from the asset; thereby encouraging and facilitating public transport usage.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. An agreement should be made with local transport operators and be tailored to the organization's requirements.
2. Information should be freely available to all building users. This can be done through hardcopies or softcopies (i.e. through intranet, notice boards, leaflets or email) or a combination of the two.
3. For organizations with a fixed shift pattern i.e. where building users will predominantly arrive/depart at set times, the credits can be allocated when a dedicated bus service to and from the building at the beginning and end of each shift/day has been provided. The bus must provide transfer to the local population center, public transport interchange or be a door-to-door service.

Evidence

1. A copy of the arrangement(s) with local public transport provider(s).
2. A copy of public transport operator timetables.
3. A copy of the public transport route map highlighting the location of the asset.
4. Evidence confirming installation of measures that are in place to make the information available to building users. This could include, but is not limited to, photographic evidence of notice boards or copies of leaflets.

Additional information

-

Occupier Management TRA 08 – Local amenities

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

Is information made available to asset users on the location of local amenities near the asset?

Aim

To ensure that asset users do not travel excessively to reach amenities; thereby reducing the environmental impact of prolonged travel.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Don't know
0	No
4	Yes

Assessment criteria

1. Local amenities include, but are not limited to:
    a. Local convenience store
    b. ATM/cash machine
    c. Post office
2. Site and local amenities information needs to be made readily available to all building users. This can be done via hardcopies or softcopies (i.e. leaflets, maps or information board).
3. The distance/time required to get to the local amenities should be clearly communicated within the information provision.

Evidence

1. Evidence of information provision to all building users such as photographic evidence of an information board or local information leaflets.

Additional information

-

Occupier Management TRA 09 – Transport objectives

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

In the last reporting year for the organization, what percentage of the organization's transport objectives and targets were achieved?

Aim

To ensure that targets related to transport are met within an appropriate timeframe, enabling the introduction of new targets; thus ensuring the continual improvement of transport.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

Assessment criteria

1. Targets must be for the latest available year.

Evidence

1. Copy of documented targets and when these were achieved.
2. Documentation and photographic evidence confirming installation of measures that support the Assessment criteria.

Additional information

-

Occupier Management TRA 10 – Transport impact of commuting

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

What is the total work commute in miles per year for staff in the asset?

Aim

To recognize and encourage the measurement of annual distance travelled for staff commutes; improving knowledge of management, and enabling quantitative targets to be implemented.

Available credits

Mode of transport	Figures to be entered in relevant fields (2 credits can be awarded if known for 1 or more categories).
Car (vehicle miles/year)	
Train (passenger miles/year)	
Light rail/tram (passenger miles/year)	
Bus (passenger miles/year)	
Motorcycle (vehicle miles/year)	
Bicycle/walk (miles/year)	

Assessment criteria

1. Staff commute relates to the total distance that people that work in the asset travel to and from work. This does **not** include additional business related trips, such as external meetings.
2. Travel data should be collected through travel surveys or other reliable form of data collection.

Evidence

1. A copy of a document demonstrating results of staff commuting survey, illustrating a relevant transport data
2. Documentation illustrating how such data was acquired.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Car: any personal vehicle used for commuting purposes.

Train: includes rail service between a central city and adjacent suburbs (also called commuter rail, regional rail or suburban rail) and long-distance rail between major cities.

Light rail/tram: this category includes rail travel within an urban center (such as subways, elevated railways, metropolitan railways (metro), streetcars, trolley cars, and tramways). -

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management TRA 11 – Transport impact of business travel

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

What are the transport impacts of business travel relating to this asset in miles per year?

Aim

To recognize and encourage the measurement of annual distance travelled for business; thereby improving knowledge of management, and enabling quantitative targets to be implemented.

Available credits

Mode of transport	Figures to be entered in relevant fields (maximum of 2 credits available)
Long haul flights – over 7 hours in length (passenger miles/year)	
Medium haul flights – between 1.5 hours and 7 hours in length (passenger miles/year)	
Short haul flights – up to 1.5 hours in length (passenger miles/year)	
Car (vehicle miles/year)	
Train (passenger miles/year)	
Light rail/tram (vehicle miles/year)	
Bus (vehicle miles/year)	
Motorcycle (vehicle miles/year)	
Bicycle/walk (miles/year)	

Assessment criteria

1. Business travel relates to the total distance that people that work in the asset travel for business. (This includes business related trips, such as external meetings, overseas conferences, etc.)

Evidence

1. Transport data, including documentation illustrating how such data was acquired.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Car: any personal vehicle used for business travel purposes.

Train: includes travel on commuter rail (between a central city and adjacent suburbs) and intercity rail (between major cities).

Light rail/tram: rail typically within an urban center, such as subways, elevated railways, metropolitan railways (metro), streetcars, trolley cars, and tramways. -

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management TRA 12 – Transport impact of goods delivery

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

What is the total business related transport impact of goods delivery from operations in this asset?

Aim

To recognize and encourage the measurement of the annual distance travelled for goods delivery; thereby improving knowledge of management, and enabling quantitative targets to be implemented.

Available credits

Mode of transport	Figures to be entered in relevant fields (2 credits available)
Medium- to Heavy-Duty Truck (vehicle miles/year)	
Van or Light-Duty Truck (vehicle miles/year)	
Standard-sized vehicle (vehicle miles/year)	
Rail freight (ton-miles/year)	
Marine freight (ton-miles/year)	

Assessment criteria

1. Goods delivery from operations includes goods delivered to **AND** from the asset.
2. Where there are no business related impacts of goods delivery please fill in '0' in the relevant fields. Credits will then be awarded accordingly.

Evidence

1. Goods delivery figures, including documentation illustrating how such data was acquired.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Medium- to Heavy-Duty Truck: a large, heavy motor vehicle over 14,000 lbs used to transport and deliver goods.

Van or Light-Duty Truck: vehicles with a wheelbase greater than 121 inches, weighing no more than 14,000lbs. Includes full-size pickup trucks, full-size vans and extended-length SUVs.

Standard-sized vehicle: vehicles with a wheelbase less than 121 inches. Includes passenger cars, minivans, SUVs and small pickup trucks. -

Water

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
WAT 18	Water management: Staff engagement	3
WAT 19	Water monitoring & management	48
WAT 20	Water management targets	4
WAT 21	Water consumption	2
Total credits available		**57**

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management WAT 18 – Water management: Staff engagement

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

Question

How are activities managed to avoid unnecessary water consumption?

Aim

To ensure the reduction of water consumption and the demands placed on water supplies.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credits	Answer options
0	Question not answered
0	Activities are not managed
1	Green/staff champions identified to encourage reduction of water wastage
1	Awareness training for staff
1	Staff feedback mechanisms in place to raise issues, such as leakages
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Staff champions should promote reductions in water consumption through frequent engagement with staff.
2. Awareness raising should be through seminars, team meetings or general updates.
3. Feedback mechanisms should be simple to access.

Evidence

1. Interviews with relevant staff.
2. Copy of awareness raising material.
3. Copy of relevant feedback procedures.

Additional information

-

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Occupier Management WAT 19 – Water monitoring & management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
48	Yes

Question

To what extent are water management arrangements in place that allow monitoring against set targets for the organization at this asset?

Aim

To recognize and encourage management arrangements aimed at reducing the consumption of water and increasing awareness of water consumption.

Minimum standards

1. To gain a 'Pass' rating the occupying organizations must ensure that water consumption is recorded.
2. In addition to point 1, to gain a 'Good' rating the occupying organization must ensure that water consumption is monitored.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credit(s) Awarded	Answer option
1	Scope and objectives defined
1	Water consumption is recorded
1	Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed
1	A water management system is in place
1	Water consumption is monitored
1	Includes mechanisms to incorporate feedback into procedures or strategy
1	Improvement targets are set in line with best practice guidance available
1	Environmental management system (EMS) is in place that includes procedures to review position against an appropriate peer group through published guidance, benchmarking etc. with regards to water
40*	Water saving initiatives are undertaken (in line with the appropriate Appendix)*
0	Other

*Appendix section on page 383

Appendix

The WAT 19A – Water Appendix lists several in house initiatives that might be utilized by the organization to meet the aims of this section.

Assessment criteria

1. A water management policy should address/declare that:
    a. The organization will comply with environmental legislation relating to water management.
    b. The organization is dedicated to reducing consumption of water as a result of its operation and related activities.
    c. As part of the strategy there must be:
        i. A water consumption minimization champion, who has the support of senior management, with responsibility for the necessary communications, resources, action program and training to make the strategy work
        ii. Some form of training of employees in their role(s) and responsibilities for water consumption minimization

Evidence

1. Copy of the water management arrangements
2. Copies of records for monitoring the consumption phases / sectors / areas / processes
3. Agenda of the training records, employee attendance records
4. Management review records where relevant to water management
5. Interviews with staff champions

Additional information

-

Occupier Management WAT 20 – Water management targets

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

In the last reporting year for the organization, what percentage of the organization's annual water management objectives/targets at this asset was achieved?

Aim

To ensure that water management objectives are met within an appropriate timeframe, enabling the introduction of new targets; thus ensuring the continual improvement of water performance.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

Assessment criteria

1. Figures must be those relating to the latest annual targets that have been set.

Evidence

1. Meter readings from previous year.
2. Current meter readings.
3. Copy of water management policy highlighting water targets.

Additional information

-

Occupier Management WAT 21 – Water consumption

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

What was the total quantity of water consumed in thousand gallons (kgal) at this asset during the reporting period?

Aim

To ensure that management and occupants of the asset are aware of the consumption of water for the last year.

Available credits

Credits	Enter total quantity of water consumed in kgal during the reporting period
2	

Assessment criteria

1. The occupying organization must make clear how this information was collected.

Evidence

1. Meter readings from previous year
2. Utility bills

Additional information

-

Materials

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
MAT 15	Material procurement: Selection	7
MAT 16	Material procurement: Management arrangements	52
MAT 17	Supplier approval	3
MAT 18	Supplier quality policy	4
MAT 19	Supplier environmental management	4
MAT 20	Supplier quality management (third party certified)	4
MAT 21	Supplier environmental management (third party certified)	4
MAT 22	Supplier responsible sourcing standard (third party certified)	4
MAT 23	Material procurement targets	4
Total credits available		**86**

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management MAT 15 – Material procurement: Selection

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
7	Yes

Question

To what extent are sustainability and environmental issues considered when procuring materials for this asset?

Aim

To limit the environmental impact of materials procured for occupant activities.

Minimum standards

To gain an 'Outstanding' rating, the occupier of the asset must ensure that responsible procurement has been conducted in accordance with a procedure/guideline/standard that has international scope.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credits	Answer options
0	Not applicable
1	Minimizing the emission from deliveries
2	Procedures are in place to reduce procurement of consumables where practicable
2	Procedures are in place to take account of embodied emission impacts such as recyclability, low energy, reusable, sustainable, life cycle
2	Responsible sourcing has been conducted in accordance with a procedure/guideline/standard that has international scope.
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Materials that are covered in the procurement policy relate to materials that are needed to perform the tasks that are relevant to the type of asset. These materials can include not just office operations but all business activities, and include but are not limited to:
    a. Office paper
    b. Cleaning products
    c. Ink cartridges
    d. Electrical equipment
2. Criteria such as working conditions, environmental practices, safety standards, and human rights policies should be factored into the selection process.

3. Where contracting with a supplier, companies should make it known that they expect business partners to comply with all national laws and regulations, including labor and environmental laws.
4. All timber or timber-based products that is procured is 'Legally harvested and Legally traded timber' as outlined in the additional information section.

Evidence

1. Copy of Sustainable procurement policy,
2. Evidence of actions taken to monitor embodied impacts of purchased materials,
3. Documented confirmation from suppliers,
4. Certification reference number against appropriate responsible sourcing standard.

Additional information

Relevant definitions

Responsible sourcing: The management and implementation of sustainable development principles in the provision, procurement and traceability of construction materials and components. In BREEAM, this is demonstrated through auditable third-party certification programs. More information will be available in the Resources section on www.breeam.com. Including an up to date table of responsible sourcing certification programs recognized by BRE Global Ltd. for the purposes of a BREEAM assessment.

BRE Global framework standard (BES 6001) for responsibly sourcing of construction products:

1. Organizational management
2. Supply chain management
3. Environmental and social care

For a copy of the standard, application forms, fee sheets, program document and certified listings related to Responsible Sourcing of Construction Products please visit the Green Book Live Website; http://www.greenbooklive.com

To ease compliance burden on suppliers, which tend to small and medium-sized enterprises, organizations should consider partnering with sectorial associations that have developed industry-wide supplier codes of conduct. Examples of such initiatives include the International Council of Toy Industries CARE Foundation.

Legally harvested timber: timber that has been harvested in accordance with the applicable legislation in the country of harvest.

Legally traded timber: timber that is legally traded means timber or products derived from timber were:

1. Exported in compliance with exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.
2. Imported in compliance with importing country laws governing the import of timber and timber products, including payment of any import taxes, duties, or levies or not in contravention of exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.
3. Traded in compliance with legislation related to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species (CITES) where applicable.

Occupier Management MAT 16 – Material procurement: Management arrangements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
52	No

Question

Are management arrangements for the procurement of materials that allow monitoring against set targets for this asset in place?

Aim

To increase awareness and continuously limit the environmental impact of materials procured for occupant activities.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credit(s) Awarded	Answer option
1	Scope and objectives are defined and appropriate requirements specified
1	Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed
1	A management system is in place to promote the efficient use of materials
1	Management arrangements include procedures to incorporate feedback from staff, clients and other stakeholders
1	Materials purchasing is monitored to include need, quantities, and sustainability issues
1	Awareness seminars/training sessions are carried out for all staff regarding materials procurement
1	Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the materials policy, objectives and targets
1	Formal, regular training is provided for staff responsible for materials procurement
1	Mechanisms are in place to incorporate feedback into procurement procedures or strategy
1	Improvement targets are set in line with best practice guidance available
1	A list of acceptable suppliers is maintained for all materials.
1	An environmental management system (EMS) is in place that includes procedures to review position against an appropriate peer group through published guidance, benchmarking etc. with regards to materials procurement

Credit(s) Awarded	Answer option
40*	Initiatives to reduce materials procurement impacts are undertaken (in line with the appropriate Appendix)*
0	Other

*Appendix section on page 384

Appendix

The MAT 16A – Materials Appendix lists several in house initiatives that might be utilized by the organization to meet the aims of this section.

Assessment criteria

1. Organizations must ensure that top management quality objectives that meet the requirements of business products are established at relevant functions and levels within the organization. It is important that quality objectives are deemed measurable and consistent with the quality policy. In planning product realization, organizations shall determine the following, as appropriate:
    a. Quality objectives and requirements for the product
    b. The need to establish processes and documents and to provide resources specific to products
    c. Required verification, validation, monitoring, measurement, inspection and test activities specific to the product and the criteria for product acceptance;
    d. Records needed to provide evidence that the realization processes and resulting product meet requirements.

Evidence

1. Copy of the procurement arrangements/procurement policy highlighting the relevant clauses.
2. Material-Management-System/Register.
3. Visual inspection of the internal organizational structure of the systems.
4. Interviews with employees.
5. Copy of the records to verify the Procurement Policy.
6. Agenda of the training records, training materials etc.
7. Copy of the procurement arrangements, including names of key personnel, objectives and guidelines used.
8. Complete records and certificates of employees.

Additional information

Other information

See: ISO 9001 “Quality Management Systems – Requirements” (ISO 9001:2008 5.3 Quality Policy; ISO 9001:2015 5.2 Policy)

About ISO 9001

ISO 9001 is an international quality management standard that presents guidelines intended to increase business efficiency and customer satisfaction. The goal of ISO 9001 is to embed a quality management system within an organization, increasing productivity, reducing unnecessary costs, and ensuring quality of processes and products.

Occupier Management MAT 17 – Supplier approval

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

Question

Which of the following initiatives are used at the organizational level to determine the acceptability of suppliers?

Aim

To ensure that materials are ethically and sustainably sourced by suppliers.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	The acceptability of suppliers is not determined
2	A Supplier Questionnaire/Survey is in use
3	Membership of an industry/supply chain initiative is required
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The acceptability of suppliers should be reviewed annually or when suppliers change to ensure the applicability of the requirements.

Evidence

1. Copy of supplier questionnaire/survey
2. Copy of letter(s) sent to suppliers
3. Copy of membership certificate.

Additional information

Other information

Organizations can ask their suppliers to provide comprehensive information about their social and environmental practices. On-site visits can be organized to monitor suppliers' progress, or lack of progress, in meeting social and environmental performance objectives. Evaluating this information can become part of a company's regular assessments of business requirements. Businesses can involve their suppliers' factory management and workers in monitoring, and provide training and tools to develop their own compliance system and identify problems.

Occupier Management MAT 18 – Supplier quality policy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What percentage of the organization's suppliers is required to have a quality policy?

Aim

To ensure that suppliers document objectives for quality and the commitment of to ensure quality.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	None
0	<25% of suppliers
1	≥25% of suppliers
2	≥50% of suppliers
3	≥75% of suppliers
4	100% of suppliers

Assessment criteria

1. A supplier/contractors quality policy should be:
    a. Appropriate to the purposes of the organization in question
    b. Include commitment to comply with requirements and continually improve the effectiveness of their quality management
    c. Provide a framework for establishing and reviewing quality objectives
    d. Reviewed at appropriate intervals for continuing suitability
2. The quality policy of the supplier does not necessarily have to be third party certified in order to comply with the credit requirements.
3. The asset owner should review that the environmental management system of suppliers is in place annually or when suppliers change to ensure the applicability of the requirements.

Evidence

1. Copy of the letters distributed to suppliers/contractors asking for the quality policy.
2. Copy of the suppliers polices.
3. List outlining all suppliers and those who have a quality policy in place.

Additional information

The percentage calculation for the suppliers is by number of suppliers rather than based on procurement spend.

See: ISO 9001 “Quality Management Systems – Requirements” (ISO 9001:2008 5.3 Quality Policy; ISO 9001:2015 5.2 Quality Policy)

About ISO 9001

ISO 9001 is an international quality management standard that presents guidelines intended to increase business efficiency and customer satisfaction. The goal of ISO 9001 is to embed a quality management system within an organization, increasing productivity, reducing unnecessary costs, and ensuring quality of processes and products.

-

Occupier Management MAT 19 – Supplier environmental management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What percentage of the organization's suppliers are required to have an environmental management system?

Aim

To ensure that suppliers manage their activities and processes to prevent or mitigate harmful environmental impacts.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	None
0	<25% of suppliers
1	≥25% of suppliers
2	≥50% of suppliers
3	≥75% of suppliers
4	100% of suppliers

Assessment criteria

1. It is important that a supplier's management system has identified the significant environmental aspects that are applicable to their organization and that they can control directly and indirectly.
2. A supplier/contractors environmental policy should be:
    a. Appropriate to the purposes of the organization in question
    b. Include commitment to comply with requirements and continually improve the effectiveness of their environmental management
    c. Provide a framework for establishing and reviewing environmental objectives
    d. Reviewed at appropriate intervals for continuing suitability
3. The asset owner should review that the environmental management system of suppliers is in place annually or when suppliers change to ensure the applicability of the requirements.
4. The environmental management system of the supplier does not necessarily have to be third party certified in order to comply with the credit requirements.

Evidence

1. Copy of the letters distributed to suppliers/contractors asking for the environmental policy.
2. Copy of the suppliers' policies.
3. List outlining all suppliers and those who have an environmental management system in place.

Additional information

The percentage calculation for the suppliers is by number of suppliers rather than based on procurement spend.

Other information

See: ISO 14001 "*Environmental Management Systems – Requirements with guidance for use*") (ISO 14001:2004 A.2 Environmental Policy, ISO 14001:2015 5.2 Environmental Policy).

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management MAT 20 – Supplier quality management (third party certified)

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What percentage of the organization's suppliers must have third party certification under a quality management standard such as ISO 9001 or equivalent?

Aim

To ensure that suppliers document objectives for quality and the commitment of the supplier to ensure quality.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	None
0	<25% of suppliers
1	≥25% of suppliers
2	≥50% of suppliers
3	≥75% of suppliers
4	100% of suppliers

Assessment criteria

1. The organizations in question shall have an implemented and maintained quality management system that is structured accordingly to continually improve its effectiveness in accordance with the requirements of International Standards.
2. Organizations that have a certified Quality Management System should:
    a. Determine the processes needed for the quality management system and their application throughout the organization,
    b. Determine the sequence and interaction of these processes,
    c. Determine the criteria and methods needed to ensure that the operation and monitoring of the above processes,
    d. Ensure the availability of resources and information necessary to support the operation and monitoring of these processes, and
    e. Monitor, measure where applicable, and analyze these processes, and

f. Implement actions necessary to achieve planned results and continual improvement of the above processes.

Evidence

1. Copy of the letters distributed to suppliers/contractors asking for the quality policy.
2. Copy of the suppliers' policies.

Additional information

The percentage calculation for the suppliers is by number of suppliers rather than based on procurement spend.

Other information

See: ISO 9001:2008 "Quality Management Systems – Requirements" (ISO 9001:2008 4.1 General requirements, ISO 9001:2015 4 Context of the organization).

About ISO 9001

ISO 9001 is an international quality management standard that presents guidelines intended to increase business efficiency and customer satisfaction. The goal of ISO 9001 is to embed a quality management system within an organization, increasing productivity, reducing unnecessary costs, and ensuring quality of processes and products.

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management MAT 21 – Supplier environmental management (third party certified)

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What percentage of the organization's suppliers must have third party certification under an environmental management standard such as ISO 14001 or equivalent?

Aim

To ensure that suppliers manage their activities and processes to prevent or mitigate harmful environmental impacts.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	None
0	<25% of suppliers
1	≥25% of suppliers
2	≥50% of suppliers
3	≥75% of suppliers
4	100% of suppliers

Assessment criteria

1. This international standard is applicable to any organization that wishes to:
    a. Maintain and improve an environmental management systems
    b. Assure itself of conformity with its stated environmental policy

Evidence

1. Copy of supplier certification under relevant standard.

Additional information

The percentage calculation for the suppliers is by number of suppliers rather than based on procurement spend.

See: ISO 14001 "*Environmental Management Systems – Requirements with guidance for use*" (ISO 14001:2004 4 Environmental management system requirements; ISO 14001:2015 4 Environmental management system requirements).

Occupier Management MAT 22 – Supplier responsible sourcing standard (third party certified)

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

What percentage of the organization's suppliers are required to have a third party certification under a recognized responsible sourcing standard?

Aim

To ensure that supplier's products have been manufactured with materials that have been responsibly sourced.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	None
0	<25% of suppliers
1	≥25% of suppliers
2	≥50% of suppliers
3	≥75% of suppliers
4	100% of suppliers

Assessment criteria

1. Responsible sourcing has been conducted in accordance with a procedure/guideline/standard that has international scope.
2. All timber or timber-based products must be 'Legally harvested and Legally traded timber' as outlined in the additional information section.

Evidence

1. Copy of supplier certification under relevant standard.

Additional information

The percentage calculation for the suppliers is by number of suppliers rather than based on procurement spend.

Relevant definitions

Responsible sourcing: The management and implementation of sustainable development principles in the provision, procurement and traceability of construction materials and components. In BREEAM, this is demonstrated through auditable third-party certification programs. More information will be available in the

Resources section on www.breeam.com. Including an up to date table of responsible sourcing certification programs recognized by BRE Global Ltd. for the purposes of a BREEAM assessment.

BRE Global framework standard (BES 6001) for responsibly sourcing of construction products:

1. Organizational management
2. Supply chain management
3. Environmental and social care

For a copy of the standard, application forms, fee sheets, program document and certified listings related to Responsible Sourcing of Construction Products please visit the Green Book Live Website; http://www.greenbooklive.com

To ease compliance burden on suppliers, which tend to small and medium-sized enterprises, organizations should consider partnering with sectorial associations that have developed industry-wide supplier codes of conduct. Examples of such initiatives include the International Council of Toy Industries CARE Foundation.

Legally harvested timber: timber that has been harvested in accordance with the applicable legislation in the country of harvest.

Legally traded timber: timber that is legally traded means timber or products derived from timber were:

1. Exported in compliance with exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.
2. Imported in compliance with importing country laws governing the import of timber and timber products, including payment of any import taxes, duties, or levies or not in contravention of exporting country laws governing the export of timber and timber products, including payment of any export taxes, duties, or levies.
3. Traded in compliance with legislation related to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species (CITES) where applicable.

Occupier Management MAT 23 – Material procurement targets

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

In the last reporting year for the organization, what percentage of the organization's materials procurement objectives and targets were achieved?

Aim

To ensure that material procurement targets are met within an appropriate timeframe, enabling the introduction of new targets; thus ensuring the continual improvement of material procurement.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

Assessment criteria

1. Figures must be those relating to the latest annual targets that have been set.

Evidence

1. Copy of documented material procurement objectives and targets,
2. Management Review minutes,
3. Review company website, intranet for publication of information.

Additional information

-

Waste

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
WST 02	Waste management: The waste hierarchy	8
WST 03	Waste management: Recycling and reclamation	4
WST 04	Waste management arrangements	51
WST 05	Waste monitoring	4
WST 06	Waste performance	2
WST 07	Waste management objectives	4
WST 08	Waste sent to landfill	2
WST 09	Waste diverted from landfill	2
WST 10	Waste sent for incineration	2
Total credits available		**79**

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management WST 02 – Waste management: The waste hierarchy

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
8	No

Question

How is waste managed in line with the waste hierarchy?

Aim

To encourage alignment of waste management policies with the waste hierarchy.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credits	Answer options
0	Question not answered
0	All waste is put into a container
2	Waste management policy incorporates the reduction of waste produced
2	Waste management policy incorporates the reuse of waste materials
2	Waste management policy incorporates recycling of waste
2	Waste management policy incorporates recovery of energy from waste
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The organization's waste management policy should state how the alignment with the waste hierarchy criteria specified is achieved.
2. The waste management policy can refer to waste from products consumed and/or produced by the organization.

Evidence

1. Copy of the waste management policy

Additional information

Other information

The waste hierarchy encourages effective management of waste through:

a. Prevention;

b. Re-use;

c. Recycling;

d. Other recovery, e.g. energy recovery; and

e. Disposal.

When applying the waste hierarchy, all measures to encourage the options that deliver the best overall environmental outcome should be taken. This may require specific waste streams departing from the hierarchy where this is justified by life cycle thinking on the overall impacts of the generation and management of such waste.

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management WST 03 – Waste management: Recycling and reclamation

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

How are waste streams managed to minimize environmental impact?

Aim

To encourage ease of recycling and reclamation when waste creation is unavoidable.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credits	Answer options
0	Question not answered
0	All waste is put into a container
1	Waste is crushed for ease of storage on site before removal for recycling
1	4 or more waste streams are segregated before removal or commingled recycling containers are used throughout the asset
1	Waste is discarded in separate containers by staff within the asset
1	Containers are adequately labeled to allow ease of use for staff
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Waste streams refer to different types of waste generated within the building, such as:
    a. Paper
    b. Cardboard
    c. Packaging
    d. Plastics; including packing film
    e. Glass
    f. Batteries
    g. Timber
    h. Fluorescent lamps
    i. Vegetable oils
    j. Mineral oils

2. Different colored glass separation is classed as one waste stream.

Evidence

1. Photographs of how waste is managed such as:
    a. Waste crushing apparatus
    b. Waste segregation
    c. Internal waste segregation
    d. Labeling of containers

Additional information

-

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management WST 04 – Waste management arrangements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
51	No

Question

To what extent are waste management arrangements/strategies that set targets and monitors implementation in place for this asset?

Aim

To recognize and encourage management arrangements aimed at improving waste production performance, segregation and awareness.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credit(s) Awarded	Answer option
1	Scope and objectives defined
1	Total waste volume/mass is recorded.
1	Targets are set to promote better waste management and monitored.
1	Waste management system is in place and operational.
1	Waste generation is monitored.
1	Awareness seminars/training sessions are carried out for all staff regarding waste minimization and management.
1	Formal, regular training including legislation and compliance awareness, is provided for staff responsible for waste management.
1	Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the waste management policies, objectives and targets.
1	Includes mechanisms to incorporate feedback into procedures or strategy.
1	Staff responsible for waste management work closely with an authorized waste management firm to ensure waste practices are managed efficiently.
1	Environmental management system (EMS) is in place that includes procedures to review position against an appropriate peer group through published guidance, benchmarking etc. with regards to waste
40*	Initiatives are taken to minimize waste (in line with the appropriate Appendix)*

Credit(s) Awarded	Answer option
0	Other

*Appendix section on page 385

Appendix

The WST 04A – Waste Appendix lists several in house initiatives that might be utilized by the organization in order to meet the aims of this section.

Assessment criteria

1. Organizations must ensure that top management quality objectives that meet the requirements of the business, are established at relevant functions and levels within the organization. It is important that objectives are deemed measurable and consistent with the policy. In planning product realization, organizations shall determine the following, as appropriate:
    a. Quality objectives and requirements for waste management
    b. The need to establish processes and documents and to provide resources specific to waste management
    c. Required verification, validation, monitoring, measurement, inspection and test activities specific to waste management and the criteria for waste management acceptance;
    d. Records needed to provide evidence that the realization processes and resulting waste management meet requirements

Evidence

1. Evidence provided for the relevant criteria can include:
    a. Audits
    b. Procedures
    c. Strategies
    d. Interviews
    e. Any other deemed suitable by the Assessor's sound judgment

Additional information

See: ISO 9001 "Quality management systems – Requirements" (ISO 9001:2008 5.4 Planning, ISO 9001:2015 6 Planning).

Occupier Management WST 05 – Waste monitoring

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

How many waste types are recorded and monitored?

Aim

To promote the practice of monitoring waste generated within the asset so the organization can understand what it produces and thus target improvements with well-designed policy.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	No recording or monitoring of waste types
1	2 waste types recorded and monitored
2	3 waste types recorded and monitored
4	4 or more waste types recorded and monitored
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. The organization should be able to demonstrate that it is recording/monitoring waste generated within the asset by providing up to date figures for waste types produced within the asset on (at least) a monthly basis.
2. Recording/monitoring of waste generated should be performed in a way that allows easy interpretation of data and be more detailed than annual figures received from waste carriers. Providing complex information, using bills from waste carriers for example, **does not** count as active monitoring/recording.

Evidence

1. Copy of recording/monitoring; this can be information contained within spreadsheets, etc.

Additional information

-

Occupier Management WST 06 – Waste performance

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

How often is the organization's waste performance at this asset reviewed?

Aim

To encourage the continual improvement of waste performance.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	Never
0	Infrequently
1	At least annually
2	At least twice a year

Assessment criteria

1. Where waste audits are regularly carried out, the following should be considered:
    a. The quantities of waste of each type generated;
    b. The way in which wastes are being handled and stored;
    c. The costs of disposal for different types of waste;
    d. Cost savings as a result of waste minimization strategies (where historical data for comparison is available);
    e. An audit has been carried out prior to the assessment and within the past twelve months and the audit has been used to inform and update the waste strategy.

Evidence

1. Copy of waste audit process and relevant paper trail.
2. Dates of previous two audits.

Additional information

-

Occupier Management WST 07 – Waste management objectives

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

In the last reporting year for the organization, what percentage of the organization's annual waste management objectives was achieved?

Aim

To encourage and recognize the meeting of waste management objectives, thereby improving waste performance.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

Assessment criteria

1. Targets must have been met for the latest annual review period.

Evidence

1. Agreed and documented informal incremental objectives/targets.
2. Presentation of achieved objectives, combined with relevant first hand evidence such as weigh bills.

Additional information

-

Occupier Management WST 08 – Waste sent to landfill

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

What is the total quantity of waste sent to landfill on an annual basis (tons) as measured in the reporting period?

Aim

To identify the impact of waste that is sent to landfill.

Available credits

Credits	Enter quantity of waste sent to landfill in tons during the reporting period
2	

Assessment criteria

1. The occupant of the asset must make clear how this information was collected.
2. Data provided must be for the same time period as the data provided in Occupier Management WST 09 – Waste diverted from landfill and Occupier Management WST 10 – Waste sent for incineration.

Evidence

1. Copies of weigh bills for the relevant time period.
2. Copies of relevant invoices and receipts.
3. Visual inspection and/or hard copy of waste calculation sheet.
4. Internal and External audit reports relevant to waste management practices (if environmental management system has been implemented by participating organization).
5. Relevant section of Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) report (if written by participating organization).

Additional information

-

Occupier Management WST 09 – Waste diverted from landfill

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

What is the total quantity of waste diverted from landfill on an annual basis (tons) as measured in the reporting period?

Aim

To encourage and promote the recycling of resources, avoiding the associated impacts of sending waste to landfill.

Available credits

Credits	Enter quantity of waste diverted from landfill in tons during the reporting period
2	

Assessment criteria

1. The occupant of the asset must make clear how this information was collected.
2. Data provided must be for the same time period as the data provided in Occupier Management WST 08 – Waste sent to landfill and Occupier Management WST 10 – Waste sent for incineration.

Evidence

1. Copies of weigh bills for the relevant time period,
2. Review of organizational waste data calculations, Internal and External audit reports relevant to waste management practices (if environmental management system has been implemented by participating organization),
3. Relevant section of Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) report (if written by participating organization).

Additional information

-

SD221 USA © BRE Global Ltd 2019

Occupier Management WST 10 – Waste sent for incineration

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
2	No

Question

What is the total quantity of waste sent for incineration on an annual basis (tons) as measured in the reporting period?

Aim

To encourage and promote the recycling of resources, avoiding the associated impacts of sending waste to landfill.

Available credits

Credits	Enter quantity of waste sent for incineration in tons during the reporting period
2	

Assessment criteria

1. The occupant of the asset must make clear how this information was collected.
2. Data provided must be for the same time period as the data provided in Occupier Management WST 08 – Waste sent to landfill and Occupier Management WST 09 – Waste diverted from landfill.

Evidence

1. Copies of weigh bills or other documentation demonstrating the amount for the relevant time period.
2. Internal and External audit reports relevant to waste management practices (if environmental management system has been implemented by participating organization).
3. Relevant section of Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) report (if written by participating organization).

Additional information

-

Land Use and Ecology

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
LE 06	Ecology/biodiversity enhancement	3
Total credits available		**3**

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management LE 06 – Ecology/biodiversity enhancement

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
3	No

Question

Does the organization contribute to ecology/biodiversity enhancement through sponsorship or active support?

Aim

To encourage organizations to support local ecology and biodiversity.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	No
1	Partnerships/sponsorship or active support arrangements are in place with international wildlife protection/enhancement organizations
2	Partnerships/sponsorship or active support arrangements are in place with state or national wildlife protection/enhancement organizations
3	Partnerships/sponsorship or active support arrangements are in place with local wildlife protection/enhancement organizations
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Partnerships/sponsorship and active support can come through direct donations of capital and/or staff time.
2. Partnerships/sponsorship and active support are most valuable when applied at a local level. Therefore, international partnerships are recognized but not awarded the maximum number of credits.
3. Partnerships/sponsorship and active support can be given to a range of groups. As a guide, these groups could:
    a. Provide advice on protecting the habitat for species of local importance to/on the site.
    b. Draw on their local knowledge of any features or species of ecological interest on or near the site.
    c. Provide on-going support and advice to the educational establishment to help manage, maintain and develop the outdoor space in the longer term.

Evidence

1. Copy of relevant partnership/sponsorship documents.

Additional information

Pollution

Category summary table

Issue reference	Title	Credits available
POL 15	Pollution management	11
POL 16	Pollution prevention arrangements	52
POL 17	Pollution prevention targets	4
Total credits available		**67**

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management POL 15 – Pollution management

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
11	Yes

Question

Is pollution managed through avoidance and management of risks?

Aim

To ensure the avoidance, or minimal production or use of polluting/hazardous materials.

Minimum standards

To gain a 'Very Good' rating the occupying organization must manage pollution control in line with effective incident response guidance/procedures in accordance to local, national, or international guidance/procedures.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credits	Answer options
2	Use of effective incident response guidance/procedures in accordance to local, national, or international guidance/procedures
2	Reduce and effectively control environmental pollution impacts (these should include the following, as a minimum, where relevant: lighting, noise generating plant/equipment, traffic nuisance)
3	Use of CO_2, CO and Nitrous Oxides (NO_x) and other emission controls
4	Use of non-polluting/non-hazardous alternatives wherever possible (these should include the following, as a minimum and where relevant: cleaning products, refrigerants, lubricants, oils, hydraulic fluids, paints, adhesives, batteries)
0	Other

Assessment criteria

1. Analysis of risks from dangerous substances, prevention and management can be demonstrated by, but not limited to:
    a. Risk assessment
    b. Procurement strategies
    c. Emergency procedures
2. Management practices should be reviewed annually or when changes to any system/building element are made.

Evidence

1. Relevant documentation outlining pollution management through avoidance and management of risks such as copies of:
    a. Risk assessments
    b. Procurement strategies
    c. Emergency procedures

Additional information

-

BREEAM®USA

Occupier Management POL 16 – Pollution prevention arrangements

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
52	No

Question

To what extent are pollution prevention objectives/management arrangements in place that allow monitoring against set targets?

Aim

To recognize and encourage management arrangements aimed at reducing pollution and increasing awareness of pollutants.

Minimum standards

1. To gain a 'Very Good' rating the occupying organization's pollution prevention management must ensure all pollution risks, levels and incidents are recorded.
2. In addition to point 1, to gain an 'Excellent' rating, the occupying organization's pollution prevention management must ensure that regular inspection and maintenance of machinery/equipment that is operational in the organization's day-to-day activities is conducted.

Available credits

Credits awarded for each of the following criteria met:

Credit(s) Awarded	Answer option
1	Scope and objectives defined
1	Pollution risks, levels and incidents are recorded
1	Targets are set and monitored to ensure that actions are completed
1	Regular inspection and maintenance of machinery/equipment operational in the organization's day-to-day activities to minimize the risk of pollution occurring
1	Routine inspection and maintenance of machinery/equipment occasionally operated in the organizations activities to minimize the risk of pollution occurring
1	Pollution risks, levels and incidents are monitored
1	Awareness seminars/training sessions are carried out for all staff regarding pollution avoidance and control
1	Individual staff are identified who are accountable for implementation of the pollution management policies, objectives and targets

Credit(s) Awarded	Answer option
1	Formal, regular training is provided for staff responsible for pollution prevention and management
1	Mechanisms are in place to incorporate feedback into procedures or strategy
1	Improvement targets are set in line with best practice guidance available
1	Environmental management system (EMS) is in place that includes procedures to review position against an appropriate peer group through published guidance, benchmarking etc. with regards to pollution
40*	Initiatives are undertaken to prevent pollution (in line with the appropriate Appendix)*
0	Other

*Appendix section on page 387

Appendix

The POL 16A – Pollution Appendix lists several in house initiatives that might be utilized by the organization in order to meet the aims of this section.

Assessment criteria

1. Organizations must ensure that top management quality objectives that meet the requirements of the business are established at relevant functions and levels within the organization. It is important that objectives are deemed measurable and consistent with the policy. In planning product realization, organizations shall determine the following, as appropriate:
    a. Quality objectives and requirements for pollution management
    b. The need to establish processes and documents and to provide resources specific to pollution management
    c. Required verification, validation, monitoring, measurement, inspection and test activities specific to pollution management and the criteria for pollution management acceptance;
    d. Records needed to provide evidence that the realization processes and resulting pollution management meet requirements

Evidence

1. Copy of the pollutant avoidance agreements business rules.
2. Copy of records of pollutants and all compensation measures undertaken including a copy of the register of pollution accidents.
3. Copy of the records of maintenance and repair copy of the maintenance register photos.
4. Copy of the records of maintenance and repair copy of the maintenance register.
5. Copy of the records for inspection during operation.

6. Copy of the pollutant avoidance agreements agenda of the training records, interviews with staff.
7. Copy of the pollutant avoidance agreement names of the employees, interviews with employees.
8. Records and certificates of the employees who have completed the training interviews with employees.
9. Assessor information for visual inspection of the internal organization structure of systems date of the last feedback.
10. Copy of the pollutant avoidance agreement benchmarks used.
11. Credentials of the peer group date of benchmarks compared to the measured, which were published.

Additional information

-

BREEAM® USA

Occupier Management POL 17 – Pollution prevention targets

Number of credits available	Minimum standards
4	No

Question

In the last reporting year for the organization, what percentage of the organization's pollution prevention objectives and targets were achieved?

Aim

To ensure that targets set ensuring continual action to prevent pollution.

Available credits

Credits	Answer option
0	Question not answered
0	<25%
1	≥25% to <50%
2	≥50% to <75%
3	≥75% to <100%
4	100%

Assessment criteria

Not applicable.

Evidence

1. Agreed and documented informal incremental objectives/targets, allowing improvements to be assessed against.
2. Presentation of achieved objectives.
3. Copy of Pollution Management Strategy (relating to set objectives/targets).

Additional information

-

Appendix A: Offices

BREEAM®USA

Introduction

The Appendix questions for offices cover a range of initiatives that might be undertaken by the organization in order to improve its performance. The categories with appendix question sets are:

- Health and Wellbeing
- Energy
- Transport
- Water
- Materials
- Waste
- Pollution

Available credits

Each section within the Appendix has the potential to earn credits, which are then added to the final score in Part 3: Occupier Management.

Assessment criteria

In order to demonstrate compliance, as with all other questions, the organization will need to demonstrate that it is actively practicing the relevant initiatives.

HEA 26A – Health and Wellbeing

Health and Wellbeing Initiatives	Credit(s) Available
Provision of planters in occupied areas	1
Clear labeling of hazardous areas, e.g. electricity machinery rooms	2
Provision of comfortable and individual controllable lighting at workstations	2
Provision of refreshment facilities, e.g. cafeteria/restaurant, hot and cold drink provision, vending machines	2
Provision of external rest areas	2
Monitoring and if necessary reducing office noise levels to acceptable levels.	4
Monitoring of internal air quality and making changes to address issues raised	4
Avoiding the use of equipment, such as printers and photocopiers, within main office areas without adequate local ventilation	4
Implementation of a system for staff to give feedback on comfort of an asset	4
Provision or subsidization of the use of sports facilities	4
Encouraging social activities, e.g. team building activities, organization of social events etc.	4
Provision of indoor rest areas and/or staff lounges	4
Provision of a health plan for staff, e.g. employee discount with private health care organizations, corporate discount with fitness club etc.	4
Total credits available	**41**

Assessment criteria

1. The organization must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the Assessor on a case-by-case basis.

Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
    a. Photographic evidence.
    b. Technical/manufacturer information.
    c. Staff interviews.
    d. Any other method deemed suitable by the Assessor.

ENE 68A – Energy

Energy Initiatives	Credit(s) Awarded
Energy saving tips and signage on Information Technology (IT) equipment	1
No supplementary heating/cooling/ventilation	2
Use of energy efficient printers and photocopiers, such as those that are ENERGY STAR® certified	2
Making guidance on use of blinds on windows to maximize daylight available	2
Policy to minimize printing	2
Use of proximity/time switches to equipment	2
Reduction in electrical information technology equipment, such as printers, through group use	2
Switching off lights and equipment doing out-of-work hours	2
Making guidance on manual control of heating and cooling available	2
Switching off equipment rather than leaving on standby	2
Use of water boilers in place of kettles	3
Use of energy efficient servers, such as those that are ENERGY STAR® certified	3
The virtualization of servers	3
Use of Light Emitting Diode (LED) screens	4
Use of low power work stations and/or laptops, and a remote server which hosts all information Technology (IT) applications and data storage	4
Voltage optimization of utility electricity	4
Total credits available	**40**

Assessment criteria

1. The organization must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the Assessor on a case-by-case basis.

Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
    a. Photographic evidence.
    b. Technical/manufacturer information.

c. Staff interviews.

d. Any other method deemed suitable by the Assessor.

BREEAM®USA

TRA 06A – Transport

Transport Saving Initiatives	Credit(s) Available
Policy for a staff car share program	2
Well-lit foot and cycle paths on and around the site to optimize safety and encourage use	2
Home working policy	2
Restricted parking based on a needs-based permit system that gives priority to drivers that meet certain criteria	2
Charging for car parking	2
Staff car pool (more than 1 person going to customer for meeting)	2
Policy for staff use public transport network if travelling on business within the local area	2
All car pool cars to have CO_2 emissions of 177 CO_2 g/mile or less	2
All rental cars to be have CO_2 emissions of 193 CO_2 g/mile or less	2
Carbon offsetting of staff travel	2
Staff/visitor shuttle bus for travel to and from key transport links	4
Policy to calculate and monitor CO_2 or equivalent transport emissions from staff travel/commute	4
Incentives in place for travelling to work on foot, by bike, car sharing or by public transport (for example, a monthly free breakfast/lunch)	4
Video-conferencing facilities	4
Phone or internet conferencing facilities	4
Total credits available	**40**

Assessment criteria

1. The organization must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the Assessor on a case-by-case basis.

Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
    a. Photographic evidence.
    b. Technical/manufacturer information.
    c. Staff interviews.
    d. Any other method deemed suitable by the Assessor.

WAT 19A – Water

Water Saving Initiatives	Credit(s) Awarded
Separate water meter on hot water cold feed to provide indication of hot water consumption	1
Water softeners are demand initiated (i.e. based on water consumption rather than a pre-programed timer)	2
Insulating pipework	2
Water saving tips/signage	2
Only appliances requiring soft water are connected to water softeners	3
Policy to reuse water for landscaping	3
Reduce water consumption for landscape by use of mulch to retain moisture in the garden.	3
Install rain barrels to help collection of rain water for landscape use	3
Adopt water efficient landscaping practices – i.e. use plants that require less water	3
Reducing water pipe length	3
Ensure that water using appliances are operated with full loads	3
Fit water saving devices in cistern for flushing or fit low water consumption appliances such as those with the WaterSense® label	5
Water pressure reduction for general appliances	7
Total credits available	**40**

Assessment criteria

1. The organization must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the Assessor on a case-by-case basis.

Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
    a. Photographic evidence.
    b. Technical/manufacturer information.
    c. Staff interviews.
    d. Any other method deemed suitable by the Assessor.

MAT 16A – Materials

Materials Procurement initiatives	Credit(s) Awarded
Monitor and double check meeting arrangements to reduce over ordering refreshments, room size, facilities	2
Use of detergents which are fully degradable	2
Recyclability/Reusability - for example print cartridges	2
Base decision process on whole life cost of equipment and consumables, considering the following:	
Durability - extended life of products	2
Maintainability - ease of cleaning, self-cleaning	2
Upgradeability - computer equipment that can be upgraded, modular equipment	2
Work with suppliers to minimize packaging	4
Policy and procurement to ensure that printers with low impact such as ammonia free, non-carcinogenic toners	6
Policy to review all consumed products at least once every two years to identify alternatives which have less of an environmental impact	8
Working with suppliers to reduce impact of supply chain	10
Total credits available	**40**

Assessment criteria

1. The organization must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the Assessor on a case-by-case basis.

Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
    a. Photographic evidence.
    b. Technical/manufacturer information.
    c. Staff interviews.
    d. Any other method deemed suitable by the Assessor.

WST 04A – Waste

Waste Initiative	Credit(s) Awarded
Office recycling programs covering key office waste streams for example paper, magazines, printer/toner cartridges	1
Use clearly differentiated recycling containers (such as labeled and color coordinated) to promote sorting at source	1
Double sided printing	1
Avoidance of printing emails and other non-essential documentation	1
Staff awareness and communication program	1
Incentives for staff to reduce waste	1
Use of recycled paper	1
Re-use of paper	1
Recycling programs covering other office-related waste streams: cans and bottles, plastics, food waste	2
Electronic archiving	2
Policy and procedure to reuse of single sided printing as office notepads, draft printing etc.	2
Use of 20lb bond paper or lower for general use	2
Office food waste streams sent for recovery by composting or bio-gas	2
Policy and procedure to reuse office supplies such as binders, file folders, paper clips etc.	2
Policy and contract to reuse unwanted IT equipment through local schools, charities, and community organizations	2
Policy and contract to reuse furniture within the organization or through local schools, charities and community organizations	2
Policy and contract to work with suppliers to minimize and/or reuse packaging / take back surplus products	2
Encourage the use of reusable catering containers such as plates, cups etc.	2
Policy and procedure in place to recycle disposable batteries	2
Conduct office surveys and occupant surveys to identify ways of minimizing, recycling and managing waste	2

Waste Initiative	Credit(s) Awarded
Use a certified/registered waste carrier to collect materials, such as waste contractors, scrap metal merchants, recycling businesses, local authorities, and dumpster hire businesses	4
Work with a waste contractor to maximize reuse, recycling and minimize landfill	4
Total credits available	**40**

Assessment criteria

1. The organization must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the Assessor on a case-by-case basis.

Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
    a. Photographic evidence.
    b. Technical/manufacturer information.
    c. Staff interviews.
    d. Any other method deemed suitable by the Assessor.

BREEAM® USA

POL 16A – Pollution

Pollution prevention and control initiatives to air, land and water	Credit(s) Awarded
Procedures and training for safe delivery and handling of hazardous materials	4
Check chemical, oil and waste storage containers are fit for purpose, regularly inspected and maintained	6
Ensure wash waters from cleaning activities with detergents should be drained to sanitary sewer	6
Ensure oil interceptors are located and maintained in areas such as parking lots, garages, forecourts, kitchens and fuel delivery areas	6
Check surface water treatments address contamination by silt, chemicals, oils etc.	6
Check drainage plans are easily accessible to occupier	6
Appropriate contingency plans - spill kits or absorbent material for spillages or run off water from fire fighting	6
Total credits available	**40**

Assessment criteria

1. The organization must adhere to each requirement in all instances within the asset unless there is a valid reason that this is not the case.
2. Valid reasons will need to be assessed by the Assessor on a case-by-case basis.

Evidence

1. This can include, but is not limited to:
    a. Photographic evidence.
    b. Technical/manufacturer information.
    c. Staff interviews.
    d. Any other method deemed suitable by the Assessor.

Schedule of changes to this BREEAM Program Document

This Schedule provides details of relevant additions or changes made to the BREEAM USA In-Use 2016 program that have resulted in a reissue of the Technical Manual. It is important to note that in general a reissue does not result in changes, deletions or additions to the main assessment criteria or assessment issues. Fundamental changes to assessment criteria are typically made as part of a formal program update, resulting in a new BREEAM program version.

Key	Type of Change
A	An addition, insertion, alteration or deletion to the program document which does not directly affect the assessment criteria, calculation procedures or schedule of evidence (and therefore assessment of an asset).
C	An addition, insertion, alteration or deletion to the scope, assessment criteria, evidence required or relevant definitions.

Issue 1.1

Issue or section	Identifier	Type	Specifics of change
Throughout the Manual	--	A	Correction of typographical errors and clarifications of terminology
Evidence requirements for BREEAM in-Use	Robustness of evidence	A	"Photographic evidence can be used…" to "Assessors are encouraged to gather their own photographic evidence which can be used…"
All Parts		A	Inserted table to show the total number of credits available for each Category addressed in the Part.
HEA 03	Evidence 4	C	Changed “Heating” to “Temperature”
HEA 05	Title	A	Changed title from “Microbial contamination” to Minimizing Legionella contamination risk” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
HEA 06	Title	A	Changed title from “Water provisions” to “Drinking water provisions” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
ENE 04	Title	A	Changed wording in title from “Pressure/air” to “Building pressure/air” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
ENE 21	Title	A	Changed title from “Leakage tests” to “Duct and air handling leakage tests” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.

Issue or section	Identifier	Type	Specifics of change
ENE 23	Title	A	Changed title from “Water heating” to “Domestic water heating” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
ENE 24	Title	A	Changed title from “Water heating energy sources” to “Domestic water heating energy sources” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
ENE 30	Evidence 1	A	Changed “community” to “micro grid” and “schemes” to “programs” to reflect US terminology.
TRA 01	Assessment Criteria 1c	A	Changed “with over” to “for the next” and added “+” in front of “1000” to clarify the calculation method.
WAT 01	Title	A	Changed words in title from “meter” to “metering” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
POL 03	Title	A	Changed title from “Impact mitigation” to “Surface water runoff impact mitigation” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
POL 05	Title	A	Changed title from “Leak detection systems” to “Refrigerant leak detection systems” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
MAN 09	Title	A	Changed title from “Operating procedures” to “Operating procedures: energy reduction” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
MAN 10	Title	A	Changed title from “Leak testing” to “Ventilation system leak testing” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
MAN 12	Title	A	Changed title from “Building controls review” to “Building management system review” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
MAN 13	Title	A	Changed title from “Building adaptation” to “Functional adaptability” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
ENE 45	Evidence 4	C	Changed “12-month period specified” to “in ENE 31 and ENE 32”, reflecting the requirement for consistent reporting period for all fuel types.
WAT 12	Evidence 3b	C	Added “or tenant/staff presentations” after newsletters.
WAT 13	Title	A	Changed title from “Drinking water” to “Drinking water provision” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.

Issue or section	Identifier	Type	Specifics of change
WAT 14	Title	A	Changed title from “Refurbishment” to “Refurbishment policy: water efficient fixtures and fittings” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
WAT 15	Title	A	Changed title from “Water strategy” to “Water system maintenance strategy” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
WAT 17	Title	A	Changed title from “Aspects and impacts” to “Water extraction” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
MAT 11	Title	A	Changed title from “Risk assessment” to “Fire risk assessment” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
MAT 12	Title	A	Changed title from “Risk management” to “Fire risk management” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
MAT 14	Title	A	Changed title from “Hazard management” to “Natural hazard management” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
WAT 18	Title	A	Changed title from “Water management” to “Water management: staff engagement” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
WAT 19	Title	A	Changed title from “Water management” to “Water monitoring & management” to more accurately describe what the issue addresses.
MAT 18	Additional information	C	Clarification that the percentage calculation for the suppliers is by the number of suppliers rather than procurement spend.

Issue 2.0

Issue or section	Identifier	Type	Specifics of change
Terms and conditions	Disclaimer	A	Replaced BRE America, LLC with BRE Global Limited
About the BRE Group		A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
About this Program Document		A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
Changes to this BREEAM program document		A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited Added row to include this issue as the Current version.

Issue or section	Identifier	Type	Specifics of change
Introduction to BREEAM		A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
Introduction to BREEAM	BREEAM USA programs	A	Slight rewording to remove reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
Introduction to BREEAM	Ensuring quality and consistency	A	Replaced section to reference BRE Global Limited specific activities
BREEAM USA In-Use	BREEAM USA In-Use	A	Spelling correction
BREEAM USA In-Use	Relationship to other BREEAM programs	A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
BREEAM USA In-Use	How to apply the BREEAM USA In-Use program	A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
Scoring and Rating of BREEAM USA In-Use	Introduction paragraph	A	Removal of extra wording.
Scoring and Rating of BREEAM USA In-Use	Minimum standards	A	Spelling correction
Evidence requirements		A	Removed references to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
Building Details	Asset Address	A	Reordered State, ZIP Code and Country to reflect the order in the online tool.
Building Details	Asset Ownership/ Occupier Details	C	Clarified that where there are multiple organizations or persons occupying/leasing the asset, “multi-tenanted” or a variant can be entered.
Basic Building Details	Ownership / Occupancy Details	A	Spelling correction
Basic Building Details	Asset Dimensions	A	Spelling correction

Issue or section	Identifier	Type	Specifics of change
Asset Type		C	Clarified that the full list of Asset Types and Subtypes are available to the Assessors through the BREEAM Knowledge Base.
ENE 30	On-site renewables	A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
ENE 34	Natural gas consumption	A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
ENE 35	Propane consumption	A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
ENE 36	Gas oil consumption	A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
ENE 38	Biodiesel consumption	A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
ENE 40	Wood/Waste wood consumption	A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
ENE 41	District heating consumption	A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
ENE 43	District cooling consumption	A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
ENE 66	Sub-metering: Tenanted areas	A	Removed reference to BRE America, LLC and replaced with BRE Global Limited
MAT 09	Sustainable procurement policy	A	Spelling correction
Schedule of Changes		A	Insertion of this table.